



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NEDL TRANSFER



HN 1CF1 Q

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME
FROM THE
SIBLEY BOOK FUND
OF
PHILLIPS EXETER ACADEMY.

AND GIVEN TO

Henry Clinton Fay Jr.
Oct 4 1882

TO BE KEPT BY HIM THROUGH LIFE.

Albert C Perkins

Principal.

Albert C Perkins
Treasurer.

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD, BARTHOLOMEW,
BULLIONS AND MORRIS, GILDERSLEEVE,
AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,

ACTING ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN,
AND AUTHOR OF
"EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION."

CHICAGO:
S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.
1877.

KD 33456



COPYRIGHT, 1877.
By S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

UNIVERSITY PRESS: WELCH, BIGELOW, & Co.,
CAMBRIDGE.

PREFACE.

THESE Lessons are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's Commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to six of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated, — to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction.

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman history, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons. Complete vocabularies are added ; in the Latin-English part, such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily understood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words. *The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflections and build up a vocabulary.*

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions, so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences. No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to the capacity of all classes ; such an attempt would be futile. It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recitations to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To insure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book contains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of requiring inflections and translations to be written *every day* upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class, is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recitation, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me

necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons — American, English, and German — which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, August, 1877.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS	ix
INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS	1
LESSON I. — NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION	3
LESSON II. — NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	4
Declension of <i>deŭ</i> and <i>filia</i> .	
LESSON III. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION	6
Nouns in <i>tis</i> ; Gender.	
LESSON IV. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	7
Nouns in <i>r</i> and <i>um</i> . — Prepositions used with the Ablative.	
LESSON V. — NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS	9
Genitive Singular of Nouns in <i>tis</i> or <i>tum</i> ; Vocative of <i>filia</i> and proper names in <i>tis</i> ; Declension of <i>deus</i> . — Use of <i>in</i> and <i>sub</i> .	
LESSON VI. — ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	11
Declension and Agreement of Adjectives.	
LESSON VII. — ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (continued)	12
Genitive in <i>tis</i> and Dative in <i>i</i> .	
LESSON VIII. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPPOSITION	14
LESSON IX. — VERBS : PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS	15
LESSON X. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION	16
Personal Endings of the Active Voice ; Present Stem ; Present Indicative Active of <i>amō</i> .	
LESSON XI. — THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	18
Subject Nominative. — Agreement of Verb. — Direct Object.	
LESSON XII. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION (continued)	19
Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of <i>amō</i> .	
LESSON XIII. — MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE ; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT ; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS	21
LESSON XIV. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION ; PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES ; THE PERFECT STEM	23
LESSON XV. — VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERATIVE MOOD ; USE OF THE IMPERATIVE	25
LESSON XVI. — VERBS : INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE	26

LESSON XVII. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE	27
Infinitive as Object; Subject of the Infinitive.	
LESSON XVIII. — GENERAL EXERCISE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS	29
LESSON XIX. — THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS	31
LESSON XX. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	32
LESSON XXI. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	33
Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.	
LESSON XXII. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	35
LESSON XXIII. — THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>)	36
LESSON XXIV. — CONJUGATION OF THE VERB SUM	38
LESSON XXV. — PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	38
LESSON XXVI. — THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	40
LESSON XXVII. — COMPOUNDS OF SUM. — DATIVE WITH COM- POUNDS	41
LESSON XXVIII. — CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE	43
Infinitive without Subject Accusative.	
LESSON XXIX. — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMO	44
LESSON XXX. — REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES	46
LESSON XXXI. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO	48
Definitions and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.	
LESSON XXXII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (<i>continued</i>)	49
LESSON XXXIII. — PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (<i>continued</i>)	51
LESSON XXXIV. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF AMO	52
LESSON XXXV. — DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION	53
LESSON XXXVI. — ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COM- POUND SENTENCES	55
LESSON XXXVII. — ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION	56
LESSON XXXVIII. — ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (<i>con- tinued</i>)	58
LESSON XXXIX. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	59
Declension of Comparatives.	
LESSON XL. — COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>)	61
LESSON XLI. — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	62
LESSON XLII. — ADVERBS	64
Definition; Derivation; Classification; Syntax.	
LESSON XLIII. — VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE	66
LESSON XLIV. — ADDITIONAL EXERCISES	67
Accusative of Time.	

LESSON XLV. — VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE	69
LESSON XLVI. — DEPONENT VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION	70
LESSON XLVII. — FOURTH DECLENSION	72
Declension of <i>dōmūs</i> .	
LESSON XLVIII. — FIFTH DECLENSION	73
LESSON XLIX. — VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION : ACTIVE VOICE	74
LESSON L. — VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION : PASSIVE VOICE	76
LESSON LI. — VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION : ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES	78
LESSON LII. — THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN IO	79
LESSON LIII. — DEPONENT VERBS : THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	80
Ablative with certain Deponents.	
LESSON LIV. — GENERAL EXERCISE : PLACE	82
Place to which ; Place at or in which ; Place from which.	
LESSON LV. — NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE	84
LESSON LVI. — COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME	86
LESSON LVII. — PRONOUNS : PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE	87
LESSON LVIII. — PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : DEMONSTRATIVE	89
LESSON LIX. — PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : RELATIVE	90
Declension ; Agreement.	
LESSON LX. — PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>) : INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE	92
Declension of <i>aliquis</i> .	
LESSON LXI. — CONJUNCTIONS	93
LESSON LXII. — CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES	95
LESSON LXIII. — PARTICIPLES	96
Definitions ; Distinctions of Tense ; Used for a Subordinate Clause.	
LESSON LXIV. — ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	98
LESSON LXV. — IRREGULAR VERBS : FERÒ	100
LESSON LXVI. — COMPOUNDS OF FERÒ. — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION	101
LESSON LXVII. — IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>) : VOLO AND ITS COMPOUNDS	103
LESSON LXVIII. — IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>) : EO AND FIO	105
LESSON LXIX. — DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS	106
Infinitive as Subject.	
LESSON LXX. — THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT	108

LESSON LXXI. — USE OF THE DATIVE	110
Dative with Intransitive Verbs.	
LESSON LXXII. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE .	112
Ablative with Comparatives. — Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command.	
LESSON LXXIII. — SEQUENCE OF TENSES. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES	114
LESSON LXXIV. — USE OF THE DATIVE (<i>continued</i>) . . .	116
Dative of the Person possessing; Two Datives.	
LESSON LXXV. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES .	118
LESSON LXXVI. — USE OF THE GENITIVE	120
Genitive with Adjectives; Genitive in Predicate; Genitive with certain Verbs.	
LESSON LXXVII. — CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	122
LESSON LXXVIII. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE	124
Ablative expressing Measure of Difference; Ablative of Quality.	
LESSON LXXIX. — CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	126
LESSON LXXX. — USE OF THE ABLATIVE (<i>continued</i>) . . .	128
Ablative of Price; Ablative of Distance; Ablative with Adjectives.	
LESSON LXXXI. — CAUSAL CLAUSES	130
LESSON LXXXII. — TEMPORAL CLAUSES	132
LESSON LXXXIII. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS .	134
LESSON LXXXIV. — ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE	136
LESSON LXXXV. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>) . . .	138
LESSON LXXXVI. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>) . . .	139
LESSON LXXXVII. — THE GERUND	140
LESSON LXXXVIII. — THE GERUNDIVE	142
LESSON LXXXIX. — THE SUPINE	144
LESSON XC. — THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS .	146
LESSON XCI. — GENERAL EXERCISE	148
LESSON XCII. — GENERAL EXERCISE	150
SELECTIONS FOR READING.	
I. FABLES	153
II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY	156
GENERAL VOCABULARY.	
I. LATIN-ENGLISH	167
II. ENGLISH-LATIN	211

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G., Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.	indecl., indeclinable.
A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.	indef., indefinite.
abl., ablative.	interrog., interrogative.
acc., accusative.	lit., literal, literally.
act., active.	LN., Lesson.
adj., adjective.	m., masculine.
B., Bartholomew's Latin Grammar.	n., neuter.
B. & M., Bullions and Morris's Latin Grammar.	num., numeral.
cf., <i>confer</i> , compare.	part., participle.
comp., comparative.	pass., passive.
conj., conjunction.	perf., perfect.
dat., dative.	pers., person.
dem., demonstrative.	pl., plural.
dep., deponent.	poss., possessive.
Ex., Example.	prep., preposition.
f., feminine.	pres., present.
fr., from.	pron., pronoun.
G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar.	Ref., Reference.
gen., genitive.	rel., relative.
H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, latest edition.	sc., <i>scilicet</i> , understand.
ind., indicative.	sing., singular.
	subst., substantive.
	voc., vocative.
	VY., Vocabulary.
	w., with.

N. B. — The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (4) refer to such sections.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

THE following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included: e. g. 2-4 or *a-c* signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by *a*, *b*, and *c* are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

1. Alphabet. A. & G. 1, 1, *a, b*: A. & S. 2, 1; 3, 1, 2; 4: B. 3-10, *w. fine print under 6 and 7*: B. & M. 3; 5; 6; 7: G. 1; 2; 6: H. 2-4, *w. fine print under 3 and 4*.

2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (a) *Roman Method.* A. & G. 1, 5, *a-d*; 2, 1, *a-c*: B. 11-15; 16-21: G. 3; 4; 7; 8; 9: H. 15, 1-4; 16; 17; 18, 1-3.

(b) *English Method.* A. & G. 2, 2, *a-d*; 1, 5, *a-d*: A. & S. 7-12, *w. fine print*; 17-23: B. 377, *the whole*: B. & M. 11; 12; 13, 1-6: H. 6-14, *w. fine print*.

(c) *Continental Method.* A. & S. 6; 17-23: B. & M. 14, 1-5; 13, 1-6: H. 19.

3. Quantity. A. & G. 3, 1, 2, *a-e*, NOTE: A. & S. 5, 1; 13, 1-6, *w. fine print*: B. 12, *a-c*: B. & M. 8; 16-19: G. 2, 2; 10-13, REMARK 1: H. 20-23, *w. fine print*.

4. Accent. A. & G. 4, 1, 2, *a, b*, NOTE: A. & S. 14, 4, 5; 15, 1, 2; 16, 1-3: B. 22-25: B. & M. 20, *w. fine print*: G. 14: H. 24; 25.

5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. 5, 1-4: A. & S. 24, 1-4; 25, 1-3; 26, 1-7: B. 26-33; 34-40; 115: B. & M. 24; 25, 1, 2; 26, 1, 2, *Obs.* 1-2; 27-30: G. 15-17, *the whole*: H. 37-40.

6. Gender. A. & G. 6, 1, *a, c*, 2-4: A. & S. 27-30; 33; 34, 1-4: B. 116-118, I.-III.: B. & M. 32-35: G. 18; 19, I.-III.; 20, 1-3: H. 41; 42, I.-III.

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. 7, 1-7: A. & S. 35, 1-2; 36; 37, 1-6: B. 119-120, *w. fine print*: B. & M. 31; 42, 4. Case; 43, *w. fine print*: G. 21-24: H. 44; 45, *w. fine print*.

8. Declension. A. & G. 8, 1, a, b, 2, a-f: A. & S. 38; 39, I.; 40, 2-10: B. 121; 122, REM. 1-5; 123: B. & M. 44-46, *w. fine print*; 47; 50, Dec. I.: G. 25-26, *the whole*: H. 46, *w. fine print*; 47.

Note.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left to the teacher. He may find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The following suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the portions of grammar referred to under "**1. Alphabet**," he should turn to "**LESSON I.**" and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After learning "**2**," he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the rules under "**2**," and divide the words which they form into syllables. *Learn thoroughly; review often; use the blackboard.*

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

LESSON I.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.

9. Learn the *declension* of the model noun, the *stem* and *case-endings*, the *meaning* of each case, and the *rule of gender* for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. 9, 1, 2, c; 8, 1, a: A. & S. 41; 39, I.; 40, 2-10: B. 121; 123; 124: B. & M. 46; 48, *First*; 51; 53: G. 24; 27, REMARK 2; 28: H. 46, 1; 48, 1, 2, 1)-3), 4.

10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent. Not only the Nominative, but also the *Genitive* and *Gender* of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

causă, ae, ¹ f. ²	cause, reason.
Gĕnĕvă, ae, f.	Geneva. ³
glŏriă, ae, f.	glory.
linguă, ae, f.	tongue, language.
mĕmŏriă, ae, f.	memory.
ripă, ae, f.	bank (of a stream).
viă, ae, f.	way, road.

¹ *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of *causă*, substitute *ae* for final *ă*: e. g. Nom. *causă*, Gen. *causae*.

² In the Vocabularies, *f.* stands for *feminine gender*, *m.* for *masculine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

³ For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabularies, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

N. B. Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often. Remember that *the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented*.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe¹ each word.

1. Causă.² 2. Glōriārūm.³ 3. Rīpae. 4. Linguā.⁴
5. Mēmōriā.⁵ 6. Linguās. 7. Viā. 8. Rīpās. 9. Mēmōriāe. 10. Glōriāe. 11. Causās. 12. Viām. 13. Mēmōriās. 14. Viā. 15. Glōriām. 16. Linguārūm. 17. Causīs.
18. Rīpā. 19. Gēnēvae.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Of a² cause. 2. Of the causes. 3. With glory.
4. For glory. 5. With tongues. 6. In the language.
7. O Memory. 8. In memory. 9. Of the banks. 10. By the way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).

² The Latin language has no article. In translating Latin nouns into English, *a*, *an*, or *the* may be supplied according to the sense. E. g. *causă* may be rendered *a cause*, *the cause*, or simply *cause*.

³ Which syllable of *glōriārūm* is accented? Why? (4) — *Numerals printed thus (4) refer to sections of this book.*

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *linguā*? Why? (3)

⁵ The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition *in* and the noun: e. g. *mēmōriā*, *in memory*; *linguā*, *in the language*.

⁶ Locative Case; translate by the preposition *at* or *in* and the noun: e. g. *Rōmae*, *at Rome*, or *in Rome*.



LESSON II.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

11. Declension of *deă* and *fiilă*. A. & G. 9, 2, e: A. & S. 43, 2, last part: B. 124, REM. 1: B. & M. 57: G. 27, REMARK 3: H. 49, 4.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. 56, 1: A. & S. 235: B. 329,
RULE LXXX.: B. & M. 981: G. 417: H. 432.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ad</i> , prep. w. acc. ¹	<i>to</i> .
<i>angustiae</i> , ² <i>ārum</i> , f.	<i>narrow pass</i> .
<i>circū</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>around</i> .
<i>deā</i> , ae, f.	<i>goddess</i> .
<i>filii</i> , ae, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
<i>Mātrōnā</i> , ae, m.	<i>the Marne</i> .
<i>pēr</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>through</i> .
<i>prōvinciā</i> , ae, f.	<i>province</i> .
<i>silvā</i> , ae, f.	<i>forest</i> .
<i>trans</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>across</i> .

¹ "prep. w. acc." signifies that *ad* is a preposition used with the Accusative.

² *angustiae* is rarely used in the singular. Notice that it is equivalent to two English words, *narrow*, an adjective, and *pass*, a noun.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad rīpām.¹ 2. Ad rīpām Matrōnae.² 3. Trans Matrōnām.
4. Deā.³ 5. Deae. 6. Deārūm. 7. Deābūs.
8. Trans viām. 9. Pēr angustiās.⁴ 10. Pēr silvās. 11. Pēr prōvinciām.
12. Circū Gēnēvām. 13. Silvārūm. 14. Silvīs.⁵ 15. Ad filiās deārūm.

Write in Latin.

1. The daughter. 2. A daughter. 3. O daughter. 4. To the daughter of a goddess.
5. To⁶ the Marne. 6. To⁶ the banks of the Marne. 7. For the daughters. 8. Through the provinces.
9. Through the forest. 10. In⁵ the forest. 11. In⁵ the memory of the daughters.

Notes and Questions.

¹ When a noun is governed by a preposition, give the rule referred to under 12.

² Give the rule for gender of *Matrōnā*. (6)

³ See LN. I., NOTE 2.

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *angustias*? Why? (3) Which syllable then has the accent? (4)

⁵ See LN. I., NOTE 5. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between *silvā* and *silvā*?

⁶ Translate by the proper preposition.



LESSON III.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.

13. Nouns in ūs. A. & G. 10, 1, 2, servūs, 4, a: A. & S. 46, dōmīnūs: B. 126; 127, dōmīnūs, REM. 4: B. & M. 59; 61, dōmīnūs: G. 29, hortūs, REMARK 4: H. 51, servūs, 1, 2, 1)–3), 6.

14. Gender. A. & G. 10, 3: A. & S. 46: B. 127, REM. 3: B. & M. 71: G. 30: H. 51.

VOCABULARY.

<i>antē</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>before.</i>
<i>amicitiā</i> , ae, f.	<i>friendship.</i>
<i>amicūs</i> , i, m.	<i>friend.</i>
<i>carrūs</i> , i, m.	<i>cart, wagon.</i>
<i>contrā</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>against.</i>
<i>Germanī</i> , ōrūm, m.	<i>the Germans.</i>
<i>lēgātūs</i> , i, m.	<i>legate, lieutenant.</i>
<i>nūmērūs</i> , i, m.	<i>number.</i>
<i>ocūlūs</i> , i, m.	<i>eye.</i>
<i>pōpūlūs</i> , i, m.	<i>people.</i>
<i>Rhēnūs</i> , i, m.	<i>the Rhine.</i>
<i>Rhōdānūs</i> , i, m.	<i>the Rhone.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Pōpūli.¹
2. Pōpūlē.
3. Pōpūlis.
4. Amīcitiā pōpūli.
5. Antē ocūlōs pōpūli.
6. Nūmērūs carrōrūm.
7. Nūmē-

rūs Germānōrūm. 8. Nūmērūs āmicōrūm. 9. Nūmērūs filiārūm. 10. Filiā lēgātī.² 11. Amicō pōpūlī. 12. Contrā āmicūm pōpūlī. 13. Contrā lēgātōs pōpūlī. 14. Trans Rhōdānūm. 15. Pōpūlī³ āmicīs. 16. Ad Germānōs.

Write in Latin.

1. Of a friend. 2. To a friend. 3. O friend. 4. Against a friend. 5. Of friends. 6. The friends of the Germans. 7. Against the friends of the Germans. 8. Before the eyes of the Germans. 9. Across the Rhine. 10. Before the lieutenant's² eyes. 11. The friendship of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the stem of *pōpūlī*? What are the case-endings of the Second Declension? Which cases are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension? What is the rule of gender for the Second Declension? (14) What is the rule of gender for the First Declension? What are the general rules for gender? (6)

² The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case: *filiā lēgātī* is best rendered *the lieutenant's daughter*.

³ The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic: e. g., *filiā āmicī*, *the friend's daughter*; but *āmicī filiā*, *the friend's daughter*.



LESSON IV.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in *r* and *um*. A. & G. 10, 2: A. & S. 46: B. 127, a, b, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. 60; 61; 63: G. 29; 31: H. 51, 2, 3)–6), 4, 1).

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. A. & G. 56, 1, b: A. & S. 241: B. 178: B. & M. 470: G. 418: H. 434.

N. B. The list of prepositions used with the Ablative should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

ā, āb, ¹ prep. w. abl.	<i>from, by.</i>
āgēr, āgrī, m.	<i>field.</i>
bellūm, ī, n.	<i>war.</i>
cūm, prep. w. abl.	<i>with.</i>
ē, ex, ¹ prep. w. abl.	<i>out of.</i>
frūmentūm, ī, n.	<i>corn.</i>
gēnēr, gēnērī, m.	<i>son-in-law.</i>
Helvētīī, ōrum, m.	<i>the Helvetii.</i>
puēr, puērī, m.	<i>boy.</i>
regnūm, ī, n.	<i>sovereignty, kingdom.</i>
sīnē, prep. w. abl.	<i>without.</i>
templūm, ī, n.	<i>temple.</i>
vīr, vīrī, m.	<i>man.</i>

¹ **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **āb** and **ex** before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse¹ the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Puērī,² puērōrūm. 2. Gēnērō, gēnērīs. 3. Agrī Helvētīōrūm. 4. Cūm vīrīs. 5. Sīnē vīrīs. 6. Ex templō.³
7. Cūm Helvētīīs. 8. Sīnē regnō. 9. Sīnē frūmentō.⁴
10. Bellūm cūm Germānīs. 11. Ex prōvinciā. 12. Ab Helvētīīs. 13. Pēr agrōs Helvētīōrūm. 14. E Rhōdānō.⁵
15. Cūm āmicō Helvētīōrūm. 16. Regnūm Germānōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. Of the war, of the wars. 2. For the war, for the wars. 3. The wars with the Helvetii. 4. By the Germans. 5. Without friendship. 6. With the man's⁶ daughters. 7. Without the boys. 8. O boys. 9. Before the war with the Germans. 10. Without wagons. 11. Out of the Rhine. 12. Out of the temples of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing a noun.*—**cūm vīris**: **vīris** is a masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, *vīro*; declined, *vīr, vīrī, vīrō, vīrūm, vīr, vīrō*;

plural, *virī, virōrūm, viris, virōs, viri, viris*; it is in the Ablative plural and governed by the preposition *cūm*; rule (16). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

² Which endings do nouns in *r* drop? **ANS.** The Nominative *ūs* and the Vocative *ē*. To which declension does *puērī* belong? Why? *prōvinciā*? Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (8)

³ Notice that the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of neuter nouns are alike and end in the plural in *ā*.

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *frumentō*? Why? Which syllable then is accented? (3 and 4)

⁵ Which syllable of *Rhōdānūs* takes the accent?

⁶ See LN. III., NOTE 2.



LESSON V.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

17. Nouns in *iūs* or *iūm* generally form the Genitive Singular with one *i*, while the accent remains unchanged: *Cassī, of Cassius*; *filī, of the son*; *consiliī, of counsel*.

18. *Vocative of filiūs and proper names in iūs.* A. & G. 10, 4, *c*: A. & S. 52: B. 128, *a*: B. & M. 65: G. 29, 2: H. 52, 2.

19. *Use of in and sub.* A. & G. 56, 1, *c*: A. & S. 235, (2): B. 179: B. & M. 987; 988: G. 419: H. 435, 1.

20. *deūs* — stem *DEO* — is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>deūs,</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī.</i>
Gen. <i>deī,</i>	<i>deōrūm, deūm.</i>
Dat. <i>deō,</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dīs.</i>
Acc. <i>deūm,</i>	<i>deōs.</i>
Voc. <i>deūs,</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī.</i>
Abl. <i>deō,</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dīs.</i>

VOCABULARY.

<i>Cassiūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Cassius.</i>
<i>castrūm, ī, n.</i>	<i>fort; pl. camp.</i>

<i>conciliūm</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.	<i>council, assembly.</i>
<i>consiliūm</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.	<i>counsel, plan.</i>
<i>deūs</i> , <i>ī</i> , m. (see 20),	<i>god.</i>
<i>ēquūs</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.	<i>horse.</i>
<i>ēt</i> , conj.	<i>and.</i>
<i>filiūs</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.	<i>son.</i>
<i>īn</i> , prep. w. acc. or abl.	<i>into, in.</i>
<i>jūgūm</i> , <i>ī</i> , n.	<i>yoke.</i>
<i>Lūciūs</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.	<i>Lucius.</i>
<i>oppidūm</i> , <i>ī</i> , m.	<i>town.</i>
<i>sūb</i> , prep. w. acc. or abl.	<i>under.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Ad deōs ēt¹ deās. 2. Cūm deīs ēt deābūs. 3. Antē ōcūlōs deōrūm ēt deārūm. 4. In² oppidō. 5. In² oppidūm. 6. In castrā³ Germānōrūm. 7. Consiliō⁴ deōrūm. 8. Sīnē consiliis. 9. In conciliō Helvētiōrūm. 10. Sūb jūgūm. 11. Cūm ēquīs ēt carris. 12. Cūm ēquīs ēt carris Lūcī. 13. Fīliūs Lūcī Cassī. 14. Fīlī⁵ Lūcī Cassī. 15. Pēr oppidā Germānōrūm.⁶ 16. Germānōrūm⁶ oppidā. 17. Trans Rhēnūm ēt Rhōdānūm. 18. Gēnēr Lūcī. 19. Cassī.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. To sons and daughters. 2. With sons and daughters. 3. Before the eyes of sons and daughters. 4. Into² the towns of the Germans. 5. In² the Germans' camp.³ 6. Into the council of the Germans. 7. By the plans of the gods. 8. O son⁵ of Cassius. 9. O Cassius.⁵ 10. Under the yoke.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *ēt* is a conjunction; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. *ēt* connects similar constructions; hence *deās* is governed the same as *deōs* by *ād*.

² Observe carefully the difference in meaning between *īn* used with the Accusative and *īn* used with the Ablative.

³ Observe that *castrūm* means in the Singular *a fort*, but in the Plural *a camp* (military camp); a Roman camp was surrounded by a trench and a rampart.

⁴ See 17.

⁵ See 18 and A. & G. 53: A. & S. 240: B. 210, RULE VI.: B. & M. 974: G. 194, REM. 3: H. 369.

⁶ What is the difference between *oppidā Germanōrū* and *Germanōrū oppidā*? LN. III., NOTE 3.



LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

21. Learn the declension of *bōnūs* (*cārūs*). A. & G. 16, 1: A. & S. 104; 105, 1, 2: B. 154; 155, 1: B. & M. 189; 190, 1: G. 15, I, 2; 33: H. 146-148.

22. Agreement of Adjectives. A. & G. 47: A. & S. 205: B. 266, RULE LI.: B. & M. 650: G. 285: H. 438.

VOCABULARY.

<i>bōnūs</i> , ā, ūm, ¹	<i>good.</i>
<i>cārūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>dear, beloved.</i>
<i>exemplū</i> , ī, n.	<i>example.</i>
<i>lacrimā</i> , ae, f.	<i>tear.</i>
<i>magnūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>great, big, large.</i>
<i>mālūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>bad.</i>
<i>multūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>much; pl. many.</i>
<i>parvūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>small.</i>
<i>rēliquūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>remaining.</i>
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>Roman.</i>

¹ ā and ūm are the feminine and neuter endings: recite as if it were printed *bōnūs, bōnā, bōnūm*.

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.¹

1. Vīr bōnūs,¹ filiā bōnā,² exemplū bōnūm. 2. Vīrī mālī, filiae³ mālae, exemplā mālā. 3. Cūm filiā cārā. 4. Cūm filiis⁴ cārīs. 5. Glōriā magnā Lūcī Cassī.⁴ 6. Exemplō pōpūlī Rōmānī. 7. Multīs cūm lacrimīs. 8. Puērī

multi ēt parvī.⁵ 9. Oppidā multā ēt magnā. 10. Pēr multōs agrōs. 11. In reliquā oppidā. 12. Amīcūs pōpūlī Rōmānī. 13. Cūm amīcīs pōpūlī Rōmānī. 14. In prōvinciām magnām. 15. Carrī multi ēt parvī. 16. In templīs magnīs Germānōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. Through small⁶ fields. 2. Through small towns. 3. Through a small province. 4. Through the remaining towns. 5. The friendship of the Roman⁷ people. 6. Many good boys.⁵ 7. Many beloved daughters. 8. Many bad men. 9. In a large temple. 10. With many friends.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing an adjective.* — **vīr bōnūs** : **bōnūs** is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions ; Stems, **ĒONO** and **ĒONA** ; declined, **bōnūs, bōnā, bōnūm** ; **bōnī, bōnae, bōnī** ; **bōnō, bōnae, bōnō** ; **bōnām, bōnām, bōnām** ; **bōnē, bōnā, bōnūm** ; **bōnō, bōnā, bōnō** ; Plural, **bōnī, bōnae, bōnā** ; **bōnōrūm, bōnārūm, bōnōrūm** ; **bōnīs, bōnīs, bōnīs** ; **bōnōs, bōnās, bōnā** ; **bōnī, bōnae, bōnā** ; **bōnīs, bōnīs, bōnīs** ; it is in the Nominative Singular Masculine to agree with its noun **vīr** ; rule (22). Repeat the rule.

² The adjective like the Genitive follows its noun unless emphatic.

³ What irregularity in declension have **deū** and **filiū** ?

⁴ What irregularities in declension have **filiūs** and **Cassiūs** ? (17 and 18)

⁵ The Romans wrote **multi ēt parvī**, *many AND small* ; the English write *many small*, without the conjunction.

⁶ Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and case as its noun (see 22).

⁷ In the Latin expression equivalent to *Roman people*, the adjective always follows its noun.

LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*).

23. A. & G. 16, 1, a : A. & S. 105, 3 ; 106 : B. 155, 2, 3 : B. & M. 190, 2, 3 : G. 34 : H. 149, 150.

24. Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i*. A. & G. 16, 1, b: A. & S. 107, REMARK 1, 2: B. 155, 4, REM. 1: B. & M. 191: G 35, REMARK: H. 151, 2, 3.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i* should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

<i>aegēr, aegrā, aegrūm,</i>	<i>sick.</i>
<i>āliūs, āliā, āliūd,</i>	<i>other, another.</i>
<i>libēr, libērā, libērūm,</i>	<i>free.</i>
<i>mīsēr, mīsērā, mīsērūm,</i>	<i>wretched.</i>
<i>nullūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>none, no.</i>
<i>pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,</i>	<i>beautiful.</i>
<i>sōlūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>alone.</i>
<i>tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm,</i>	<i>tender, delicate.</i>
<i>tōtūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>whole, entire.</i>
<i>ullūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>any.</i>
<i>ūnūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>one.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.

1. Cūm filiīs tēnērīs. 2. Ad vīrōs aegrōs.¹ 3. Ad āliōs vīrōs aegrōs. 4. Pēr agrōs pulchrōs. 5. Ab Helvētiīs libērīs. 6. Contrā lēgātūm mīsērūm. 7. Filiae multae ēt pulchrae.² 8. Filiārūm pulchrārūm. 9. Filiīs ēt filiābūs pulchrīs. 10. Vīrī multī ēt mīsērī. 11. Tōtīs castrīs.³ 12. Pēr Helvētiōs sōlōs. 13. Unā pēr Helvētiōs viā. 14. Aliā⁴ viā nullā. 15. Ullā sīnē causā. 16. Aliī āmicō. 17. Aliī āmicī. 18. Alius āmicī. 19. Unūs ē filiūs⁵ Cassī. 20. In⁶ āliūd⁷ oppidūm.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How does *filiūs Cassī* differ from *Cassī filiūs*? (LN. III., NOTE 3).
How does *ad vīrōs aegrōs* differ from *ad aegrōs vīrōs*? (LN. VI., NOTE 2).

² See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

³ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of *āliūs*? The Genitive Singular? The Dative Singular?

⁵ Translate *unūs ē filiūs* like *unūs filiōrūm*.

⁶ How is *in* to be rendered when used with the Ablative?

⁷ What adjectives have their Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i*?

LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPPOSITION.

25. Appositives. A. & G. 46, 1: A. & S. 204: B. 265, RULE L.: B. & M. 622: G. 318; 319: H. 352, 2; 363.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ad oppidū Gēnēvā* (appositive), *to the town of Geneva.*
2. *Tītus Lābiēnūs lēgātūs* (appositive), *Titus Labienus the lieutenant.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>aedificiū</i> , i, n.	<i>building, edifice.</i>
<i>armā</i> , ¹ ōrūm, n.	<i>arms, weapons.</i>
<i>Belgae</i> , ārūm, m.	<i>the Belgae.</i>
<i>cōpiā</i> , ae, f.	<i>plenty; pl. troops.</i>
<i>Galliā</i> , ae, f.	<i>Gaul.</i>
<i>Lābiēnūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Labienus.</i>
<i>lōcūs</i> , ² i, m.	<i>place.</i>
<i>mātūrūs</i> , a, um,	<i>ripe.</i>
<i>pēriculū</i> , i, n.	<i>danger.</i>
<i>privātūs</i> , a, um,	<i>private.</i>
<i>Sēquānī</i> , ōrūm, m.	<i>the Sequani.</i>
<i>Tītūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Titus.</i>
<i>victōriā</i> , ae, f.	<i>victory.</i>

¹ *armā*, like the English *arms*, is used only in the plural.

² *lōcūs* is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows: Nom., *lōcī* and *lōcā*; Gen., *lōcōrūm*; Dat., *lōcīs*; Acc., *lōcōs* and *lōcā*; Voc., *lōcī* and *lōcā*; Abl., *lōcīs*.

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns which are in apposition or governed by prepositions, and the adjectives.

1. *Ad Tītūm Lābiēnūm lēgātūm.*¹
2. *Cūm filiābūs*² *pulchris Tītī Lābiēnī lēgātī.*
3. *Pēr agrōs magnōs Tītī Lābiēnī lēgātī.*
4. *Ex oppidō Gēnēvā.*³
5. *In oppidū Gēnēvā.*
6. *Magnō cūm pēriculō.*
7. *Rēliquā privātā aedificiā.*
8. *Frumentū mātūrū in agrīs.*
9. *Cōpiā frumentī mātūrī*

in agrīs. 10. In Galliām, in Galliā. 11. Ex⁴ Galliā, ā⁴ Galliā. 12. Victōriā magnā Sēquānōrūm. 13. Cūm cōpiīs Belgārūm. 14. Trans Rhōdānūm⁵ īn Galliām. 15. Pēr multā lōcā. 16. Pēricūlūm deōrūm ēt deārūm. 17. Nullā victōriā sinē armīs.

Write in Latin.

1. Through the entire town. 2. Through the entire town of Geneva.³ 3. Into the province of Gaul. 4. With the troops of Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 5. The remaining private wagons. 6. Into no place. 7. In one place. 8. With many dangers. 9. With many sons and daughters. 10. The Sequani alone.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the general rules for gender? (6) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension? (9) Of the Second Declension? (14)

² What irregular case-endings have *deā* and *filiā*? (11)

³ See 25 and EXAMPLE 1.

⁴ *ē*, *ex* signifies *out of*, *from*, in the sense of *from within* a place; *ā*, *āb*, *from*, in the sense of *from near* a place.

⁵ Which syllable of *Rhōdānūs* takes the accent? Why? (4) Which of *Sēquāni*?

⁶ With which cases are prepositions used in Latin? Which prepositions are used only with the Ablative? Which with both the Ablative and Accusative? When are *īn* and *sūb* used with the Ablative? When with the Accusative?



LESSON IX.

VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar: Use of the Verb; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs; Active Voice; Use of the Indicative Mood; Use of the Present Tense; Person and Number; Conjugation.

A. & G. 23, 1, 3; 24, 1; 58, 2; 30.

A. & S. 140; 141, I, II.; 259; 145; 146; 147; 149, 1, 2.

B. 26; 41, b; 43; 44; 57; 63; 68; 292, RULE LVI.

B. & M. 258; 259, 1-3; 262; 266; 270; 271; 272; 1079; 1080.

G. 15, III.; 109; 204; 245; 246; 218; 116; 117.

H. 192; 193; 194; 195, I.; 474; 466; 199; 200.



LESSON X.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION.

27. Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem.

A. & G. 28, 1, a; 5, 2; 27, 5: A. & S. 147, 3; 150, 1, 2: B. 64, a; 69: B. & M. 333, ACTIVE VOICE; 274: G. 111: H. 247, PERSON., ACT., MEANING; 250.

28. The Present Stem¹ is found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending *rē* in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and *ērē* in the Third: e.g. *PUTĀrē* is a Present Infinitive Active and *PUTA* its Present Stem; so *DIC* from *DĪCērē*.

29. Learn the *conjugation*² and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of *āmĕ*. A. & G. 31: A. & S. 155: B. 74: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 1.

30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (27) to the Present Stem (28); also that the *first person singular* takes the termination *ō*, which absorbs the final stem-vowel *a*.

VOCABULARY.

āmō, āmārē,

convōcō, convōcārē,

confirmō, confirmārē,

importō, importārē,

occūpō, occūpārē,

vastō, vastārē,

*love.*³

call together, summon.

establish, strengthen.

bring in, import.

seize, occupy.

lay waste, devastate.

Pronounce; translate; inflect the verbs and give their elements.⁴

1. Importās,⁵ importātīs, importāmūs. 2. Amāmūs, āmant, āmāt. 3. Convōcō, convōcās, convōcāt. 4. Convōcāmūs, convōcātīs, convōcant. 5. Confirmant, confirmātīs, confirmāmūs. 6. Confirmāt, confirmās, confirmō. 7. Occūpō, āmās, importāt. 8. Importō, āmātīs, occūpant. 9. Occūpāmūs, importātīs, āmō. 10. Occūpās, occūpāt, occūpātīs.

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, he is loving.
2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate. 3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon. 4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates. 5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Present Stem is named *The First Stem* in some grammars; in others, *The First Root*.

² The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

³ Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with aid of the grammar.

⁴ The elements of a verb in the present tense are *the stem* and *personal ending*: e. g. *āmāmūs* has the stem *āmā*, signifying *love*, and the personal ending *mūs*, signifying *we*.

⁵ *importās* may be rendered *you are importing*, *you do import*, or *you import*; translate each verb the three ways.

⁶ What is the Present Stem of *pūtārē*? What does the personal ending *nt* signify? *mūs*? *s*? *tīs*? Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (28)

LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

31. A. & G. 45, 1, a, 2, 7, 8: A. & S. 200, 2, 3, 5; 201, 1-3, 10; 203, 1, 2, III., 6-9: B. 203, a-g: B. & M. 616, 1, 4-10; 618-620: G. 192; 193: H. 344; 345, I.; 346, I.; 347, 1, 2; 351; 353.

32. Subject Nominative. A. & S. 49, 2: A. & S. 209, (a.): B. 205, RULE I.: B. & M. 633: G. 194: H. 367.

33. Agreement of Verb. A. & G. 49: A. & S. 209, (b.): B. 287, RULE LV.: B. & M. 634: G. 202: H. 460.

34. Direct Object. A. & G. 52, 1: A. & S. 229: B. 212, RULE VII.: B. & M. 712: G. 329: H. 371.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Puēr* (subject) *āmāt* (predicate), *the boy loves.*
2. *Tītūs conciliūm*¹ (direct object) *convōcāt*, *Titus summons a council.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>dē</i> , prep. w. abl.,	<i>down from, concerning, for.</i>
<i>expugnō, expugnārē</i> ,	<i>storm, capture.</i>
<i>Gallūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>a Gaul.</i>
<i>impēriūm</i> , ī, n.	<i>empire, supreme power.</i>
<i>pugnō, pugnārē</i> ,	<i>fight, contend.</i>
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>a Roman.</i>
<i>servūs</i> , ī, m.	<i>slave.</i>
<i>vexō, vexārē</i> ,	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. *Cassiūs*² *oppidūm*³ *expugnāt*.⁴
2. *Helvētīi* *oppidūm* *expugnant*.
3. *Gallī* *tōtūm*⁵ *oppidūm* *occūpant*.
4. *Gallī* *multā* *oppidā* *occūpant*.
5. *Sēquānī* *agrōs* *vastant*.
6. *Agrōs* *pulchrōs* *vastāmūs*.⁶
7. *Agrōs* *magnōs* *vastās*.
8. *Cassiūs* *conciliūm*⁷ *convōcāt*.
9. *Germānī* *Gallōs* *vexant*.
10. *Rō-*

mānī oppīdūm Gēnēvām⁸ expugnant. 11. Tītūs Lābiēnūs lēgātūs oppīdūm occūpāt. 12. Rōmānī dē impēriō⁹ pugnant. 13. Dē impēriō pugnāmūs. 14. Dē impēriō pugnātīs.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights. 2. The slaves are fighting.¹⁰ 3. The Gauls are storming the town.¹ 4. The Gauls storm many towns. 5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields. 6. The Gauls fight for empire. 7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva. 8. Cassius the legate summons a large council. 9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.

² See 32 and LN. IV., NOTE 1.

³ See 34.

⁴ Why is *expugnāt* in the third person singular? (33)

⁵ See 24 and 22. Which adjectives have their Genitive in *īūs* and Dative in *ī*?

⁶ The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone; hence *vastāmūs* includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate: *devastate we.*
vastā - mūs.

⁷ See 17.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ See 16.

¹⁰ See LN. X., NOTE 5.



LESSON XII.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION. — IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of *āmāre*. A. & G. 28, 3, a (for endings); 31 (for conjugation): A. & S. 155: B. 72, Indicative; 74: B. & M. 282: G. 111, 1-3; 119: H. 205; 247, 1; 243, TENSE-SIGNS, IND., IMP., FUT.

36. Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses. A. & G. 58, 3, 4: A. & S. 145, II., III.: B. 57: B. & M. 1087; 1090: G. 222; 234: H. 468; 470.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, *ba* in the Imperfect and *bi* in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination *o*, like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future *u* takes the place of *i*.

VOCABULARY.

Aquilēiā, ae, f.	<i>Aquileia.</i>
Aquītāniā, ae, f.	<i>Aquitania.</i>
Aquītānī, ōrūm, m.	<i>the Aquitani.</i>
circūm, prep. w. acc.	<i>around, near.</i>
Helvētiūs, ā, ūm,	<i>of the Helvetii.</i>
hiēmō, hiēmārē,	<i>pass the winter.</i>
sūpērō, sūpērārē,	<i>overcome.</i>

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.¹

1. Tītus regnum occūpāt. 2. Tītus regnum occūpābāt.
 3. Tītus regnum occūpābīt. 4. Regnum occūpābāmūs.
 5. Regnum occūpābīmūs. 6. Regnum occūpābō. 7. Cō-
 piae² circūm Aquilēiam³ hiēmābant. 8. Aquītāni circūm
 Gēnēvam hiēmābunt. 9. Aquītānos sūpērābīs. 10. Rōmāni
 Helvētios sūpērābunt. 11. Galli multa lōca⁴ in Aquītāniā⁵
 occūpant. 12. Multi Germāni agros Helvētios vastābant.

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall over-
 come. 2. You are storming, you were storming, you will
 storm. 3. Titus will storm the town. 4. Titus was storming
 the town. 5. Titus storms many towns. 6. The Romans
 will pass the winter near Aquileia. 7. The Aquitani are
 passing the winter near Geneva. 8. The Gauls were fighting
 for⁶ empire. 9. The Romans fight for glory.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are *the stem, tense-sign, personal ending*: e. g. *love will you* has the Stem *āmā*, *love*; the Future Tense-Sign *bi*, *will*; the Personal Ending *tis*, *you*.

² What meaning has *cōpiæ* in the Singular? LN. VIII., Vy.

³ See 19.

⁴ Decline *lōcā*. LN. VIII., Vy., 2.

⁵ See 19.

⁶ *For*, in the sense of *concerning, about*, is to be rendered by *dē*.

⁷ How is the Present Stem found? (28) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it—Present, Imperfect, Future—denote *incomplete* action.



LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

38. Modifiers. A. & G. 45, 3, *a, b*, 4: A. & S. 202, 6, I., 1, (1.)—(3.), 2; 203, 5, I., 1, (1.)—(4.), 2: B. 288, *a*: B. & M. 1401, 1—4; 1405, II., 1—4: H. 349; 352, I., II.; 354, I., 1, 2, II., 1, 2.

39. Indirect Object. A. & G. 51, 1: A. & S. 223: B. 239, RULE XXVIII.: B. & M. 818; 819: G. 344: H. 384, I., II.

40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. 50: A. & S. 211: B. 226; 230, RULE XIX.: B. & M. 751: G. 357; 358; 360: H. 395.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Titus Lābiēnus lēgātus consilia Gallōrum ēnunciāt.*¹ *Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.*
2. *Cassius Tīto filiam in mātirimōnium dāt.*² *Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ Of this sentence, *Titus Lābiēnus* is *the subject* and is modified by *lēgātus*, *an appositive*; *consilia Gallōrum ēnunciāt* is *the predicate* and is made up of *the verb ēnunciāt* and its modifier *consilia*, *a direct object*; *consilia* is modified by *Gallōrum*, *a genitive*.

² Of this sentence, **Cassius** is the subject and is not modified ; **Tito filiam in matrimōnium dāt** is the predicate, and is made up of the verb **dāt** and its modifiers, viz : **Tito**, an indirect object ; **filiam**, a direct object ; and **in matrimōnium**, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

dō, dārē,	<i>give.</i>
ēnunciō, ēnunciārē,	<i>report.</i>
mātrīmōnium, i, n.	<i>marriage.</i>
in mātrīmōnium dārē,	<i>to give in marriage.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ **conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.**

1. Cassius² consilia Belgārum³ ēnunciābīt. 2. Rōmānis⁴ consilia Belgārum ēnunciābīt. 3. Tītus filiam in⁵ mātrīmōnium dābīt.⁶ 4. Lēgātō filiam in mātrīmōnium dābīt. 5. Lēgātis filias in mātrīmōnium dāmūs. 6. Helvētii multa lōca in Aquitānia occūpant. 7. Cassius concilium Rōmānōrum convōcāt. 8. Deos⁷ et deas⁸ in templa convōcāt. 9. Rōmāni oppīda multa et magna⁹ expugnābant. 10. Amīcītiā cūm Helvētīis confirmant. 11. Tōtum¹⁰ oppīdum ullo¹⁰ sinē pēriculo occūpābītis. 12. Galli agros multos et pulchros⁹ in Aquitānia vastābunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate; the modifiers of the subject, if any; the verb, and its modifiers, if any; SEE NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES.

² What is the Genitive and Vocative of **Cassius**? (17 and 18)

³ See 40.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase*; when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase*; when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase*.

⁶ Observe that in **dō** the characteristic **a** is short; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

⁷ See 20.

⁸ See 11.

⁹ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

¹⁰ See 24.

LESSON XIV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of *āmō*. A. & G. 28, 3, a; 31: A. & S. 155: B. 75: B. & M. 282: G. 120: H. 205; 243, TENSE-SIGNS of PLUP. and F. PERF.; 247, 1, 2.

42. *Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.* A. & G. 58, 6, 7: A. & S. 145, V., VI.: B. 57: B. & M. 1096; 1098: G. 233; 236: H. 472; 473.

43. *What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative?* A. & G. 27, 3; 58, 5: A. & S. 145, IV. and REMARK: B. 60: B. & M. 1092; 1093: G. 226; 227; 231: H. 471, I., II.

44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like the same tenses of *āmō*. These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem and denote *completed action*.

45. *The Perfect Stem* is found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping the ending *i*: e. g. Perfect Indicative *vastāvī*, Perfect Stem *vastāv*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>confirmō,</i>	<i>confirmārē,</i>	<i>confirmāvī,</i> ¹	<i>establish, strengthen.</i>
<i>convōcō,</i>	<i>convōcārē,</i>	<i>convōcāvī,</i>	<i>call together, summon.</i>
<i>dō,</i>	<i>dārē,</i>	<i>dēdī,</i>	<i>give.</i>
<i>expugnō,</i>	<i>expugnārē,</i>	<i>expugnāvī,</i>	<i>storm, capture.</i>
<i>hiēmō,</i>	<i>hiēmārē,</i>	<i>hiēmāvī,</i>	<i>pass the winter.</i>
<i>occūpō,</i>	<i>occūpārē,</i>	<i>occūpāvī,</i>	<i>seize, occupy.</i>
<i>Rōmā, ae, f.</i>			<i>Rome.</i>
<i>sūpērō,</i>	<i>sūpērārē,</i>	<i>sūpērāvī,</i>	<i>overcome, subdue.</i>
<i>vastō,</i>	<i>vastārē,</i>	<i>vastāvī,</i>	<i>lay waste, devastate.</i>
<i>vexō,</i>	<i>vexārē,</i>	<i>vexāvī,</i>	<i>disturb, harass.</i>

¹ In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active are given.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of the Indicative Mood of each verb.

1. Cassius multos agros vastāvit.² 2. Concilium Gallōrum convocāverō.³ 3. Galli tōtum oppidum occūpāverant. 4. Helvētii castra occūpāverint. 5. Rōmāni agrum Helvētium vastāverunt.² 6. Amicitiam cūm Rōmānis confirmāverūt. 7. Cōpia circūm Rōmam hiēmāverē.² 8. Cassius Tīto filiam in mātīmōnium dēdīt.² 9. Rōmāni Helvētios vexāverunt.² 10. Sēquāni Germānos sūpērāverunt.² 11. Circūm Rōmam hiēmāverant. 12. Oppidum Aquilēiam occūpāvi.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town. 2. The Aquitani will have stormed the town. 3. The Aquitani had stormed the town. 4. I have given a daughter in marriage. 5. I had given a daughter in marriage. 6. I shall have given a daughter in marriage. 7. I gave a daughter in marriage to the son of Cassius. 8. You have summoned a council of Romans. 9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ A *Synopsis* of the Indicative Mood consists of the *First Person Singular* of each tense: e. g. the synopsis of **vastāvit** is *vastō, vastābān, vastābō, vastāvi, vastāverān, vastāverō*.

² Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses: **Cassius vastāvit**, *Cassius has laid waste*, and *Cassius laid waste*. (See 43)

³ Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they denote? (44) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do they denote? (Ln. XII., NOTE 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action *is completed* in what time? (42) The Future Perfect? The Present Tense denotes that an action *is going on* in what time? (26) The Imperfect Tense? (36) The Future Tense? Give the elements of each verb in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses: e. g. *loved had they* has the Perfect Stem **āmāv**, *loved*; the Pluperfect Tense-Sign **ēra**, *had*; the Personal Ending **nt**, *they*.

LESSON XV.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of *āmf* and its meanings. A. & G. 31; 28, 1, c, for *personal endings*: A. & S. 155: B. 74, a; 64, b, for *personal endings*: B. & M. 282: G. 119: H. 205; 247, 3, for *personal endings*.

47. Use of the Imperative. A. & G. 57, 7: A. & S. 267: B. 312, RULE LXXI.: B. & M. 1110: G. 259: H. 535.

VOCABULARY.

āvūs, ī, m.

Divitiācūs, ī, m.

jūvō, jūvārē, jūvī,

mātūrō, mātūrārē, mātūrāvī,

nātūrā, ae, f.

nunciō, nunciārē, nunciāvī,

proeliūm, ī, n.

sōcēr, sōcērī, m.

vītō, vītārē, vītāvī,

vōcō, vōcārē, vōcāvī,

grandfather.

Divitiacus.

help, aid.

make haste, hasten.

nature.

announce.

battle.

father-in-law.

avoid, shun.

call.

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (47)

1. *Jūvā,¹ mātūrā, nunciā.* 2. *Jūvātō, mātūrātō, nunciātō.*
3. *Jūvātē, mātūrātē, nunciātē.* 4. *Vītā, Divitiācē,² proeliūm.*
5. *Vītā, O āvē,³ pēricūlūm.* 6. *Dātē, vīrī, Rōmānīs⁴ armā.⁵*
7. *Vōcā, sōcēr, puērōs.* 8. *Mātūrā, Cassī,⁶ Tītō⁴ nunciārē.*
9. *Mātūrātē, vīrī, oppīdūm expugnārē.* 10. *Vastātē agrōs.*
11. *Vastātē multōs agrōs.* 12. *Vastātē tōtām prōvinciām.*

Write in Latin.

1. Call the men. 2. Help the boys. 3. Shun the danger.
4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus. 5. Summon a council, Cassius.
6. Call the men, my grandfather. 7. Announce to Cassius.
8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus. 9. Men, give arms to the Belgae. 10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (28); that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.

² See LN. V., NOTE 5.

³ O *avē*, O grandfather, or my grandfather.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See LN. VIII., Vy.

⁶ See 18.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson? The Perfect Stem? Which Stem is used in the Imperative? Does the Imperative then denote *incomplete* or *completed* action? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative?



LESSON XVI.

VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

48. Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of *amō*. A. & G. 24, 4; 25; 26; 28, 3, b; 31: A. & S. 143, 4; 148, 1-3; 155: B. 51; 53, a-d; 65; 66; 72; 74, a; 75: B. & M. 264, IV.; 265; 282: G. 110; 119; 120: H. 196, II., 1-4; 205; 248, *Active*.

49. Principal Parts (Stem Forms). A. & G. 30, 5: A. & S. 151, 4: B. 73: B. & M. 275: G. 118: H. 201; 202.

50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in *ūm* by dropping the *ūm*: e. g. *cūrātūm* is a Supine in *ūm* and *cūrāt* its Supine Stem.

51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (28), the Perfect (45), and the Supine (50). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.¹

<i>amō</i> ,	<i>arē</i> ,	<i>avī</i> ,	<i>ātūm</i> , ²	<i>love.</i>
<i>cūrō</i> ,	<i>arē</i> ,	<i>avī</i> ,	<i>ātūm</i> , ²	<i>care for.</i>
<i>dō</i> ,	<i>dārē</i> , ³	<i>dēdī</i> ,	<i>dātūm</i> , ³	<i>give.</i>
<i>jūvō</i> ,	<i>jūvārē</i> ,	<i>jūvī</i> ,	<i>jūtūm</i> ,	<i>help, aid.</i>

nēgō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	deny.
pugnō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	fight.
vastō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	lay waste, devastate.
vexō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	disturb, harass.
vocō,	ārē,	āvī,	ātūm,	call.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Principal Parts (49) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies; these Parts should always be learned.

² Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like *āmō*. To form the Principal Parts let *ārē*, *āvī*, *ātūm* take the place of final *ō* in the Present Indicative Active: e. g. *cūrō*, *cūrārē*, *cūrāvī*, *cūrātūm*.

³ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice? On which Stem is each formed? Name the Infinitives of *dō*, *cūrō*, *jūvō*, and *vastō*. What is the Ending of each Infinitive? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed? What is the Ending of each Participle? What is the Future Active Participle of *dō*, *nēgō*, *pugnō*? What is the Present Participle of each? On which Stem is the Gerund formed? Form and decline the Gerund of *dō* and *cūrō*. What are the Endings of the Supine?



LESSON XVII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. 57, 8, e: A. & S. 270: B. 315, f: B. & M. 1148: G. 527: H. 550.

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. 52, 4, b: A. & S. 239: B. 225, RULE XVI.: B. & M. 1136: G. 526, second part: H. 545.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Dicīt Rōmānōs¹ oppidūm² expugnārē,³ he says (that⁴) the Romans⁴ are storming⁴ the town.*
2. *Dicīt Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnāvissē, he says (that) the Romans have stormed the town; or he says (that) the Romans stormed the town.*

3. **Dicit Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnātūrōs⁵ essē, he says (that) the Romans are about to storm the town; or he says (that) the Romans will storm the town.**

Notes on the Examples.

¹ See 53.

² See 34.

³ The whole expression **Rōmānōs oppidūm expugnārē** is the Direct Object of **dicit** (see 52).

⁴ Observe that the Infinitive **expugnārē** is translated by the Indicative *are storming*; the Subject Accusative **Rōmānōs**, by the Subject Nominative *the Romans*; and the Conjunction *that* is supplied.

⁵ Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY.

Aeduī, ōrūm, m.				<i>the Aeduī.</i>
Ariovistūs, ī, m.				<i>Ariovistus.</i>
dēmonstrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,¹				<i>show, declare.</i>
dicit,				<i>he says.</i>
existīmō, āre, āvi, ātūm,				<i>think, suppose.</i>
nēgō, āre, āvi, ātūm,				<i>deny.</i>
nunciō, āre, āvi, ātūm,				<i>announce.</i>
pūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,				<i>think.</i>

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

1. **Dicit² Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexārē.³** 2. **Pūtāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexāvissē.** 3. **Nunciāt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexātūrōs essē.** 4. **Existīmāt Ariovistūm regnūm in Galliā occūpātūrūm essē.** 5. **Tītūs existīmāt Ariovistūm regnūm in Galliā occūpāvissē.** 6. **Ariovistūs nunciāt Germānōs agrūm Helvētiūm vastātūrōs essē.** 7. **Dicit Rōmānōs frūmentūm importārē.** 8. **Existīmāt Helvētiōs frūmentūm importātūrōs essē.** 9. **Dicit Gallōs frūmentūm Rōmānīs⁴ dātūrōs essē.** 10. **Dicit Aeduōs Rōmānīs⁴ armā dātūrōs essē**

Write in Latin.

1. He says² (that⁵) the Sequani are about to harass the Helvetii. 2. He says (that) the Germans are laying waste

the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans will give corn to the Aedui. 4. Titus thinks (that) the Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

¹ The verbs in this Vy. may have as Object an Infinitive with its Subject Accusative.

² Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before attempting to translate the sentences.

³ *Form for parsing an Infinitive.* — **vexārē** is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *vexō, vexārē, vexāvī, vexātūm*; Stems, *vexa* (28), *vexāv* (45), *vexāt* (50); Infinitives of the Active Voice, *vexārē, vexāvissē, vexātūrūs esse*; it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its Subject **Rōmānōs** is the Object of **dicīt**; rule (see 52).

⁴ See 39.

⁵ Words in parentheses are not to be translated; see also Notes on the Examples, 4.



LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. — ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. 54, 6: A. & S. 247: B. 258, RULE XLIII.: B. & M. 873: G. 403: H. 414, 4.

VOCABULARY.

anīmūs, ī, m.	<i>mind.</i>
conciliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>win, conciliate.</i>
confirmō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>establish, encourage.</i>
intēr, prep. w. acc.	<i>between, among.</i>
Nōrēiā, ae, f.	<i>Noreia.</i>
oppugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>attack, besiege, assault.</i>
proptēr, prep. w. acc.	<i>on account of.</i>
Trēvirī, ōrum, m.	<i>the Treviri.</i>
verbūm, ī, n.	<i>word.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Intēr² Sēquānos ēt Helvētios. 2. Proptēr² angustias.
3. Nōrēiam oppugnāmūs.³ 4. Nōrēiam oppugnābant. 5. Rō-
māni Nōrēiam oppugnāvērunt.⁴ 6. Trēviri Nōrēiam oppug-
nābunt. 7. Dicīt Trēvīros⁵ Nōrēiam oppugnātūros⁶ essē.⁷
8. Nōrēiam oppugnātīs. 9. Nōrēiam oppugnātē.⁸ 10. Di-
vitiācus Gallōrum anīmos verbis⁹ confirmāvīt. 11. Divitiācus
Gallōrum anīmos verbis confirmābīt. 12. Tītus pūtāt Diviti-
ācum Gallōrum anīmos verbis confirmātūrūm essē. 13. Cassius
regnum concīliāvīt. 14. Cassius regnum cōpiis concīliābīt.
15. Cassius regnum cōpiis Divitiāco¹⁰ conciliābīt. 16. Nēgāt
Cassium regnum cōpiis Divitiāco concīliātūrūm essē. 17. Tītus
Divitiāco¹⁰ filiam in mātřimōnium¹¹ dēdīt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XIII., NOTE 5.

³ *Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood.* — **oppugnāmus** is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātūm*; it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic vowel is *ā*; Stems, **OPPUGNA, OPPUGNĀV, OPPUGNĀT**; Synopsis (LN. XIV., NOTE 1), *oppugnō, oppugnābām, oppugnābō, oppugnāvī, oppugnāvērām, oppugnāvērō*; conjugated, *oppugnō, oppugnās, oppugnāt, oppugnāmūs, oppugnātīs, oppugnant*; it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (**nos, we**) understood; rule (33).

⁴ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See LN. XVII., Notes on the Examples, 5.

⁷ See 52. In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated? See LN. XVII., Example 3.

⁸ See 47. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the Present Indicative?

⁹ **verbis**, *with words, or by means of words*; it is a modifier (38) of **confirmāvīt**.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ See 19.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION : NOUNS.

55. Stem and Declension. A. & G. 5, 2 ; 8, 1, a : A. & S. 38 ; 40, 10 : B. 36 ; 121 : B. & M. 44-47 : G. 16 ; 25 ; 26 : H. 46-47, including fine print.

56. A. & G. 11, II., a-d, w. declension of *consul*, *nomen*, *honor*, *leo*, *pater*, *virgo*, *opus* : A. & S. 56, II., REMARKS 1-3 ; 57, declension of *honor*, *sermo*, *pater*, *carmen* : B. 130 ; 135, w. declension of *consul*, *virgo*, *leo*, *nomen*, *amor*, *pater* : B. & M. 73-77 ; 90-97, including the Paradigms : G. 36-39 ; 40 ; 42 ; 43 ; 44 ; 46 ; 47 : H. 55 ; 56 ; 57, Case-Endings ; 60, Paradigms, 1, 3, 4.

VOCABULARY.

<i>accuso</i> , <i>are</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> ,	<i>accuse</i> , <i>censure</i> .
<i>Caesar</i> , <i>Caesaris</i> , m.	<i>Caesar</i> .
<i>consul</i> , <i>consulis</i> , m.	<i>consul</i> .
<i>citra</i> , prep. w. acc.	<i>this side of</i> .
<i>flumen</i> , <i>fluminis</i> , n.	<i>river</i> .
<i>frater</i> , <i>fratris</i> , m.	<i>brother</i> .
<i>honor</i> , <i>honoris</i> , m.	<i>honor</i> .
<i>mater</i> , <i>matris</i> , f.	<i>mother</i> .
<i>pater</i> , <i>patris</i> , m.	<i>father</i> .
<i>Sequana</i> , <i>ae</i> , m.	<i>the Seine</i> .
<i>soror</i> , <i>soris</i> , f.	<i>sister</i> .
<i>uxor</i> , <i>uxoris</i> , f.	<i>wife</i> .

Pronounce ; translate ; decline each noun and give its Stem and Endings ; parse the verbs.

1. A¹ fluminē Rhodano.² 2. E¹ fluminē Rhodano. 3. Ad flumen Sequanam. 4. Citra flumen Rhenum. 5. Pater sororem in matrimonium dat. 6. Mater sororem in matrimonium dabit. 7. Caesar sororem in matrimonium dedit. 8. Titus dicit Caesarem sororem in matrimonium dedisse. 9. Caesar uxorem accusavit. 10. Caesar consul² Titum legatum² accusaverat. 11. Negat Caesarem consulem Titum

lĕgātum accūsāvisse. 12. Caesārīs³ uxōrēm accūsābīmus.
13. Pātrēm et mātřēm et frātrēm accūsant.

Write in Latin.

1. To the river Rhone. 2. This side of the river Seine.
3. Across the river Rhine. 4. Caesar gives a sister in marriage. 5. Caesar has given to the consul a daughter in marriage. 6. He thinks (that) Caesar has given a daughter in marriage. 7. We shall accuse Caesar the consul. 8. Brothers accuse sisters.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. IV., VY., and LN. VIII., NOTE 4.

² See 25.

³ See LN. III., NOTES 2 and 3.

How is the Stem of a noun found? What are the Case-Endings of the Third Declension? Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit? How does the Stem of *flūminis* differ in form from the Nominative Singular?



LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

57. A. & G. 11, III., 1-3, *coarse print*—including the *Paradigms*: A. & S. 56, I., REMARKS 1-3; 57, *declension of* **nox, ars, milēs, lāpis, cāpūt, poēmā**: B. 130-134, *including the Paradigms*: B. & M. *all of* 86-88: G. 37; 39; 51; 54; 56; 57: H. 28, 2; 33; 36; *all of* 56-59.

VOCABULARY.

atquē ¹ or āc, ¹ conj.	and.
cāpūt, cāpītis, n.	head.
custōs, custōdis, m.	guard.
Dumnōrix, Dumnōrigis, m.	Dumnorix.
Jūra, ae, m.	the Jura.
milēs, milītis, m.	soldier.
mons, montis, m.	mountain.

pars,	partis, f.	<i>part.</i>
princeps,	principis, m.	<i>chief.</i>
rādx,	rādicis, f.	<i>root.</i>
rex,	rēgis, m.	<i>king.</i>
urbs,	urbis, f.	<i>city.</i>

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ad rēgēm Germānōrum. 2. Ad principēm Galliae prōvinciae. 3. Ad montē² Jūram. 4. Sūb³ montē Jūrā. 5. Intēr montē Jūram et flūmēn Rhōdānum. 6. Circūm urbē Rōmam.⁴ 7. In urbē Rōmā. 8. Proptēr hōnōrēs Caesāris. 9. In partēs Galliae. 10. Cūm Dumnōrigē fratrē Divitiāci. 11. Rex atquē āmicus. 12. Sīnē rēgē atquē sīnē āmicis. 13. Cāpītā milītūm. 14. Ad rādicēs montis. 15. Cum principē tōtius Galliae. 16. Urbēs multae et magnae.⁵

Notes.

¹ *atquē* is used before vowels and consonants; *ac*, only before consonants.

² A. & G. 11, III., NOTE: A. & S. 83, II., 3: B. 137, *a*, 1: B. & M. 116; 119: G. 54, REMARK: H. 65, 2.

³ See *sūb*, in General Vocabulary at end of the book.

⁴ Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.

⁵ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.



LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

58. Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing. A. & G. 52, 2: A. & S. 230: B. 216, RULE VIII.: B. & M. 715: G. 334: H. 373.

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesārēm consūlēm creāvērunt, *they elected Caesar consul.*
2. Oppīdum appellant Gēnēvam, *they call the town Geneva.*

VOCABULARY.

appellō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>name, call.</i>
civitas, civitatis, f.	<i>state.</i>
creō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>elect, appoint.</i>
lēgatio, lēgatiōnis, f.	<i>embassy.</i>
lex, lēgis, f.	<i>law.</i>
mors, mortis, f.	<i>death.</i>
pax, pacis, f.	<i>peace.</i>
post, prep. w. acc.	<i>after.</i>
proximū, ā, ūm,	<i>nearest.</i>
Pyrēnaeus, ā, ūm,	<i>Pyrenean.</i>
sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.	<i>senator.</i>
suus, ā, ūm,	<i>his, their.</i>
virtūs, virtutis, f.	<i>valor, virtue.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Pōpulus Caesārēm² consūlēm³ creāvīt. 2. Ancum Martium rēgēm pōpulus creāvīt. 3. Nunciat Ancum Martium rēgēm pōpulum³ creāvisse.⁴ 4. Pōpulus Rōmānus sēnātorēs patrēs appellat. 5. Rōmāni suam⁵ urbēm Rōmam appellāvērunt. 6. Dumnōrix, frātēr⁶ Divitiāci,⁷ regnum in suā⁵ civitatē occupāvit. 7. Helvētii cūm proximis civitatibūs pacēm et amicitiam confirmant. 8. Caesār oppidum virtutē⁸ suōrum milītūm expugnāvit. 9. Ex oppido Gēnēvā⁶ pons ad Helvētios pertinet (*extends*). 10. Aquitāniā ā Garumnā flūmīnē ad Pyrēnaeos⁹ montes pertinet. 11. Lēgatiōnis principēm Dumnorīgēm creāvērunt. 12. Belgae et Galli linguā¹⁰ et lēgībūs¹⁰ diffērunt (*differ*). 13. Post mortēm Caesāris.

Write in Latin.

1. After the death of Dumnorix. 2. After the death of his brother Divitiacus. 3. The Romans elected the man consul. 4. The Romans call their city Rome. 5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 6. He says that the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power in his state. 8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor.⁸

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See 58 and Examples.³ See 53.⁴ See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

⁵ When *suū*s refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to *Rōmāni*, render it *their*: when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 6 it refers to *Dumnōrix*, render it *his*, *her*, or *its*. It generally refers to the subject of its clause.

⁶ See 25.⁷ See 40.⁸ See 54.⁹ See General Vocabulary.¹⁰ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

59. A. & G. Review 11, II., *a-d*, III., 1-3, including all Paradigms under these references: A. & S. 57, *ōpūs* and the declensions already learned: B. 136: B. & M. all the Paradigms under 88-97, III.: G. 48-50: H. all of 61.

60. Rules of Gender. A. & G. 11, IV., 1, *a-c*: A. & S. 58; 59; 62; 66: B. 140: B. & M. 152; 159; 168: G. 40; 44; 47; 50; 57; 61, 1, 2: H. 99; 105; 111.

VOCABULARY.

<i>corpūs</i> ,	<i>corpōris</i> , n.	<i>body</i> .
<i>crūs</i> ,	<i>crūris</i> , n.	<i>leg</i> .
<i>flōs</i> ,	<i>flōris</i> , m.	<i>flower</i> .
<i>frigus</i> ,	<i>frigōris</i> , n.	<i>cold, frost</i> .
<i>fūnūs</i> ,	<i>fūnōris</i> , n.	<i>funeral procession</i> .
<i>gēnūs</i> ,	<i>gēnōris</i> , n.	<i>kind</i> .
<i>jūs</i> ,	<i>jūris</i> , n.	<i>right, law</i> .
<i>mōs</i> ,	<i>mōris</i> , m.	<i>custom, manner</i> .
<i>ōnūs</i> ,	<i>ōnōris</i> , n.	<i>load, burden</i> .
<i>ōpūs</i> ,	<i>ōpōris</i> , n.	<i>work</i> .
<i>scēlūs</i> ,	<i>scēlōris</i> , n.	<i>crime, guilt</i> .
<i>tempūs</i> ,	<i>tempōris</i> , n.	<i>time</i> .
<i>vulnūs</i> ,	<i>vulnōris</i> , n.	<i>wound</i> .

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender.¹

1. Jūs² belli; jūrā pōpūli Rōmāni. 2. Gēnūs proeli;³ multa gēnērā fūnērūm. 3. Tempōrē⁴ patrūm; tempōrā ēt mōrēs. 4. Vulnērā milītūm. 5. Flōrēs pulchri.⁵ 6. Prop-
tēr frīgōrā. 7. In⁶ rēliqum tempūs. 8. Mōrē ēt exemplō
pōpūli Rōmāni. 9. Milītēs multā vulnērā accēpērunt (*have
received*). 10. Scēlērā virōrum sunt (*are*) multa. 11. Crūrā
ēqui sunt magna. 12. Corpūs vīri est (*is*) parvum. 13. Gē-
nērā flōrūm sunt multa. 14. Nullum⁷ ōnūs aliud. 15. Nulla
ōnērā alia. 16. Onērā multa et magna. 17. Facta⁹ māla⁸
scēlērā⁹ appellāmus. 18. Rex jūrā et mōrēs vīris¹⁰ dābāt.¹¹
19. Multa gēnērā frūmenti importābimus. 20. Dicit Rō-
mānos multa gēnērā frūmenti importāre.¹²

Notes and Questions.

¹ All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce; translate," is given or not.

² Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form? What is the Plural Ending of these cases?

³ See 17.

⁴ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁵ How does *flōrēs pulchri* differ from *pulchri flōrēs*? (LN. VI., NOTE 2.)

⁶ in, for.

⁷ Name the adjectives with Genitive in *iūs* and Dative in *i*. (24)

⁸ *māla* modifies *facta*.

⁹ See 58.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ What does the Imperfect Tense denote? (36)

¹² See LN. XVII.



LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

61. A. & G. 11, I., 1, 2, and the Paradigms on page 18: A. & S. 57, declension of *turrīs, rūpēs, sēdīlē, ānimāl*: B. 130; 137, a, b, 1-2, REMARK: B. & M. all of 98, I., and 99, II.; 100: G. 58-61: H. 62-64.

VOCABULARY.

Allobrögēs, Allobrögŭm, m.	<i>the Allobroges.</i>
ānīmāl, ānīmālīs, n.	<i>animal.</i>
collīs, collīs, m.	<i>hill.</i>
crēmō, ārē, āvī, ātŭm,	<i>burn.</i>
finīs, finīs, m.	<i>limit; pl. territory.</i>
hostīs, hostīs, m. and f.	<i>enemy.</i>
ignīs, ignīs, m.	<i>fire.</i>
mārē, mārīs, n.	<i>sea.</i>
nāvis, nāvis, f.	<i>ship.</i>
nūbēs, nūbīs, f.	<i>cloud.</i>
quē, ¹ conj.	<i>and.</i>
rŭpēs, rŭpīs, f.	<i>rock, cliff.</i>
terrā, ae, f.	<i>earth, land.</i>
turrīs, turrīs, f.	<i>tower.</i>

¹ quē is appended to the second of the connected words: e. g. rŭpēs turrisquē, *cliff and tower*. Words thus appended are called *enclitics*.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. In nāvībŭs. 2. In¹ collē et in montē. 3. In hostiŭm nŭmērō. 4. Gēnērā ānīmālīŭm multa sunt. 5. Terrā mārīquē.² 6. Vīros ignī³ crēmant. 7. Allobrögēs vīrum ignī crēmant. 8. Nunciat Allobrögēs⁴ vīrum ignī crēmāre. 9. In turrībŭs et in¹ rŭpībŭs. 10. In nūbībŭs. 11. Intēr fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrögŭm⁵ Rhōdānus fluit (*flows*). 12. Helvētīi pēr angustias et fīnēs Sēquānōrum suas⁶ Cōpias trāduxērānt (*had led across*). 13. Mons Jūra fīnēs Sēquānōrum āb Helvētīis dīvidit (*separates*).

Write in Latin.

1. On¹ the cliffs. 2. Out of the ships. 3. Through the territory of the Aedui. 4. Into the territory of the Sequani. 5. On the hills and mountains. 6. In the number of animals. 7. Men will burn the tower with fire.³ 8. He says that men will burn the tower with fire. 9. Many kinds of towers. 10. The dangers of land and sea.

Notes and Questions.

¹ in, on.² A. & G. 43, 3, a: A. & S. 198, II., REMARK (a.), (b.): B. 330, a: G. 477; 478; 479: H. 587, I., 2.³ See 54.⁴ See 53.⁵ What does *Allobrögum* modify?⁶ See LN. XXI., NOTE 5. To what noun does it refer?⁷ What is the rule of gender for *mārē, rūpēs, milēs, nāvis, tempūs, hōnōr, civitās, lēgatio*? (60)

LESSON XXIV.

THE VERB SUM.

62. Learn the entire conjugation of *sum*. A. & G. 29: A. & S. 153: B. 71: B. & M. 277: G. 112: H. 204.**63.** What is an Irregular Verb? A. & G. 37: A. & S. 178: B. & M. 410: H. 289. What are the Stems of *sūm*? What are the Personal Endings? What are the Principal Parts of *sum*? Where are the following forms made: *ērām, est, fuērunt, sīmūs, ērunt, fuērant, estō, fuissēm, fuērō*?

LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. 46, 2; 47, REMARK: A. & S. 210, REMARK 1, (a.): B. 206, RULE II.: B. & M. 666: G. 202: H. 362; 438, 2.

VOCABULARY.

<i>Ārār, Ārārīs</i> , acc. <i>Ārārīm</i> , m.	<i>the Saône</i> , pronounced <i>Sōne</i> .
<i>Divico, ōnis</i> , m.	<i>Divico</i> .
<i>extrēmūs, ā, ūm</i> ,	<i>furthermost</i> .
<i>hōmō, īnis</i> , m. and f.	<i>man</i> .
<i>impērātōr, ōrīs</i> , m.	<i>commander-in-chief, general</i> .

lĕgio, ōnīs, f.	<i>legion.</i>
mŭlliĕr, ĕrīs, f.	<i>woman.</i>
obsĕs, idīs, m. and f.	<i>hostage.</i>
pōtestās, ātīs, f.	<i>power.</i>
testīs, īs, m. and f.	<i>witness.</i>

Pronounce; translate; analyze; parse.

1. Oppīdum est magnum.² 2. Anīmāl fuīt parvum.
 3. Pŭtat suam sŏrŏrĕm eſſĕ pulchram.³ 4. Hŏmīnĕs fuĕrunt
 aegri. 5. Sĕquāni ōlī ĕrunt libĕri. 6. Cĕsār ĕrāt impĕrātŏr.
 7. Mŭliĕr est bŏna. 8. Dīcīt Sĕquānos ōlos fŭtŭros eſſĕ
 libĕros. 9. Estĕ,⁴ O puĕri, bŏni. 10. Ariovistus fuīt rex
 Germānŏrum. 11. Divīco dux Helvĕtiŏrum fuĕrāt. 12. Le-
 gātīŏnīs Divīco princeps fuīt. 13. Extrĕmum oppīdum Allo-
 brŏgum est Gĕnĕvā. 14. Pŏpŭlus⁵ Rŏmānus est testīs.
 15. Erāt in Galliā lĕgio ūnā. 16. Pars cĭtrā flŭmĕn Arārīm⁶
 rĕlīquā est. 17. Flŭmĕn⁷ est Arār quŏd (*which*) pĕr finĕs
 Aeduŏrum et Sĕquānŏrum in Rhŏdānum influīt (*flows*).
 18. Mons Jŭrā⁸ est inter Sĕquānos ĕt Helvĕtios. 19. Prop-
 ter frīgŏrā frŭmenta⁹ in agris mātūra non ĕrant. 20. Aedui
 Sĕquānis¹⁰ obsĭdĕs dĕdĕrunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *hŏmo* means a *human being*, man or woman; *vīr* means *man*, *hero*, never woman.

² *oppīdum est magnum* may be rendered *the town is large*; *it is a large town*; or *there is a large town*: the word *there* as used in the last rendering has no equivalent in Latin.

³ See LN. XVII. and Examples.

⁴ See 47.

⁵ *pŏpŭlus* takes a *Singular verb*; *people*, its English equivalent, usually takes a *Plural verb*.

⁶ What is the rule of gender for *Arār*? (6)

⁷ See 64.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ Translate *frŭmenta* as if it were Singular.

¹⁰ See 39.

LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. 57, 2, a-b: A. & S. 260: B. 293: B. & M. 1161:
G. 247-249: H. 483.

EXAMPLES.

1. Si Liscus sit dux, *if Liscus SHOULD BE leader*; or, *if Liscus BE leader.*
2. Si Liscus esset dux, *if Liscus WERE leader.*
3. Si Liscus fuërit dux, *if Liscus SHOULD HAVE BEEN leader*; or, *if Liscus SHOULD BE leader.*
4. Si Liscus fuisset dux, *if Liscus HAD BEEN leader.*
5. Simus dūcēs, *LET US BE leaders.*

VOCABULARY.

cūpīdītās, ātis, f.	<i>desire.</i>
dux, dūcīs, m. and f.	<i>leader, guide.</i>
Liscūs, ī, m.	<i>Liscus.</i>
multītūdo, īnis, f.	<i>multitude.</i>
nōn, adv.	<i>not.</i>
ōrātiō, ōnīs, f.	<i>speech, oration.</i>
sī, conj.	<i>if.</i>
vectīgāl, ālis, n.	<i>tax, revenue.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each Subjunctive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Si² Caesar sit³ consul.⁴
2. Si Caesar esset consul.
3. Si Caesar fuërit consul.
4. Si Caesar fuisset consul.
5. Simus consules.
6. Si frumentum esset mātūrū.
7. Si propter frīgōra frumentum in agris sit nōn⁵ mātūrū.
8. Si vectīgālīa fuissent magna.
9. Si vectīgālīa essent parva.
10. Si Divīco princeps lēgātīōnis fuisset.
11. Si nōn⁶ bōnus sis.
12. Si ōrātiōnes Caesāris fuissent multae.
13. Si multītūdo milītum sit magna.
14. Si cūpīdītās regni esset magna.

15. Sī rex fuisses. 16. Milītes sīmus. 17. Sī milēs essem.
18. Sī sis impērātor.

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king. 2. If Ariovistus were king. 3. If Ariovistus had been king. 4. Let us be kings. 5. Let us be good. 6. If the mountain were large. 7. If the boys had been bad. 8. If we were not free. 9. If the furthest town had been Geneva. 10. If the corn had not been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus were leader of the Helvetii. 12. If the danger had been great.

Notes.

¹ A Synopsis of the Subjunctive includes the First Person Singular of each tense : e. g. *sīm, essem, fuērim, fuisset.*

² *si* is a *conditional conjunction*; the sentence which it introduces is a *conditional sentence*.

³ Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the Subjunctive is rendered in the **EXAMPLES**.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ A. & G. 45, 3, *a*: A. & S. 190, 2: B. 30: B. & M. 460: G. 440, 1, 2: H. 582. What does *nōn* modify?



LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM. — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. Compounds of sūm. A. & G. 29, *a, b*, *prōsūm*: A. & S. 154, REM. 5 and 6: B. 109, I., *a*: B. & M. 279; 411: G. 113; 114: H. 289; 290, I., III.

67. Dative with Compounds. A. & G. 51, 2, *d*: A. & S. 224: B. 242, RULE XXX.: B. & M. 826: G. 346: H. 386.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Pauci¹ sūperfuērunt, few survived.*
2. *Dux suis milītibus (67) ādērat, the leader WAS ASSISTING his soldiers.*

3. **Caesar prōvinciae (67) praefult,** *Caesar RULED OVER the province.*
 4. **Si Liscus multis¹ prōdesset,** *if Liscus WERE USEFUL to many.*
 5. **Si consilium dēfuisset,** *if counsel HAD BEEN WANTING.*
 6. **Titus lēgiōni (67) praērat,** *Titus WAS IN COMMAND OF the legion.*

VOCABULARY.

āb-sūm,	āb-essē,	āb-fui,	<i>be away, be absent, be distant.</i>
ād-sūm,	ād-essē,	ād ² -fui,	<i>be present, assist.</i>
dē-sūm,	dē-essē,	dē-fui,	<i>be wanting.</i>
hūmānītās, ātis, f.			<i>refinement, humanity.</i>
longissimē, adv.			<i>very far.</i>
pauci, ¹ ae, a,			<i>few.</i>
prae-sūm,	prae-essē,	prae-fui,	<i>be over, rule over, be in command of.</i>
prō-sūm,	prōd-essē,	prō-fui,	<i>be for, be useful.</i>
sūper-sūm,	sūper-essē,	sūper-fui,	<i>be over, survive.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multi¹ sūperfuērunt. 2. Multi³ sūpersūmus. 3. Pauci sūpērērīmus. 4. Caesar suis milītībus⁴ ādērit. 5. Si Caesar suis milītībus nōn adsit.⁵ 6. Consul urbi praērat. 7. Lābiēnus oppīdo⁶ Gēnēvae⁷ praērit. 8. Consul lēgiōni praeeest. 9. Si Caesar multis¹ prōfuisset. 10. Multis prōsūmus.⁸ 11. Nōn dēest consilium. 12. Consūles⁹ dēsūmus. 13. Belgae a hūmānītate prōvinciae¹⁰ longissimē¹¹ absunt. 14. Si deus¹² adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many¹ will survive. 2. Few³ (of us) survive. 3. The consul will assist his soldiers. 4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers. 5. Let⁸ us assist the soldiers. 6. Labiēnus was in command of the legion. 7. If Labiēnus were¹³ in command of the legion. 8. If we consuls⁹ had been wanting.

Notes.

¹ **pauci** and **multi**, like the corresponding English words *few* and *many*, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. **Pauci** is rarely used in the Singular.

² Observe that in **ad-sum** the **d** of **ad** becomes **f** before **f**.

³ **multi** modifies **nos** (*we*), the omitted subject of **sūperstūmus**; render, *many of us survive*.

⁴ See 67 and Example 2; translate as if it were an Accusative.

⁵ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 1.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ See 25.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 5.

⁹ **constūles** is an appositive to **nos** (*we*), the omitted subject of **dēstūmus**.

¹⁰ See 40.

¹¹ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

¹² See 20.

¹³ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 2.



LESSON XXVIII.

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. Possūm. A. & G. 29, b: A. & S. 154, REM. 7: B. 109, I., b: B. & M. 412: G. 115: H. 290, II., including *fine print*.

69. Infinitive without Subject Accusative. A. & G. 57, 8, c: A. & S. 271: B. 315, c: B. & M. 1138: G. 424: H. 552.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Milites pugnāre (69) possunt**, the soldiers ARE ABLE to fight;
or the soldiers CAN fight.
2. **Milites pugnāre pōtērant**, the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight;
or the soldiers COULD fight.
3. **Milites pugnāre pōtērunr**, the soldiers WILL BE ABLE to fight.
4. **Milites pugnāre pōtūērunt**, the soldiers HAVE BEEN ABLE to fight;
or the soldiers COULD HAVE fought.
5. **Sī milites pugnāre possint**, if the soldiers SHOULD BE ABLE to fight.
6. **Sī milites pugnāre possent**, if the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.

7. *Sī milītes pugnāre potuissent, if the soldiers HAD BEEN ABLE to fight.*
 8. *Dicit milītes (53) pugnāre (69) potuissē (52), he says that the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each form of **POSSŪM**; parse the Infinitives.²

1. Consul oppidum expugnāre pōtest.³ 2. Consul oppidum expugnāre pōtērāt. 3. Consul oppidum expugnāre pōtērīt. 4. Consul oppidum expugnāre pōtuīt. 5. Dicit consulem⁴ oppidum expugnāre pōtuissē.⁵ 6. Sī consul oppidum expugnāre possīt. 7. Sī consul oppidum expugnāre possēt. 8. Sī consul oppidum expugnāre pōtuissēt. 9. Pōpulus Rōmānus Cassium⁶ consulem⁶ creāre non pōtērīt. 10. Tīto⁷ filiam meam (*my*) in mātřimōnium dāre non possūm. 11. Consuli⁸ adessē pōtērīs. 12. Milītes agros hostium vastāre pōtērunt. 13. Amīcis prōdessē possūmūs. 14. Nēmo (*no one*) sīne virtūte bonus essē pōtest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1 and LN. XXVI., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

³ Observe carefully how each tense of **possūm** is translated in the EXAMPLES. What two words unite to form **possūm**? Which part of **pōtis** is used? What does the final **t** become before **s**? What becomes of **f** in the Perfect Tenses?

⁴ See 53.

⁵ See 52.

⁶ See 58.

⁷ See 39.

⁸ See 67.



LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **AMO**.

- 70.** Learn the Subjunctive Active of **āmō**. A. & G. 28, 3, a, ACTIVE VOICE, for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive; 31:

A. & S. 155: B. 72; 74, a; 75: B. & M. 282: G. 119; 120: H. 205; 243; 245.

Observe that the *Stems* and *Personal Endings* are the same as those of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī urbem occūpēmus, if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
2. *Sī urbem occūpārēmus, if WE OCCUPIED the city.*
3. *Sī urbem occūpāvērīmus, if WE SHOULD HAVE OCCUPIED the city; or if WE SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
4. *Sī urbem occūpāvissēmus, if WE HAD OCCUPIED the city.*
5. *Ut¹ urbem occūpēmus, that WE MAY OCCUPY the city.*
6. *Ut urbem occūpārēmus, that WE MIGHT OCCUPY the city.*
7. *Urbem occūpēmus, LET US OCCUPY the city.*

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Sī Sēquāni Helvētios jūvent.²* 2. *Sī Rōmāni Germānos jūvārent.* 3. *Sī rex Helvētios jūvērit.* 4. *Sī Aquītāni Sēquānos jūvissent.* 5. *Ut¹ consul Helvētios jūvet.* 6. *Ut pāter suos filios jūvāret.* 7. *Allobrōges jūvēmus.* 8. *Pueros vōcēmus.* 9. *Concīlium Gallōrum convōcēmus.* 10. *Sī Caesāri³ filiam suam in mātīmōnium det.* 11. *Sī cum proximis cīvītātibus⁴ pācem et āmicītiā confirmes.* 12. *Ut mīlites circum Rōmam hiēmārent.* 13. *Ut pōpulus Ariovistum⁵ rēgem⁵ creāret.* 14. *Ut consul oppīdum Gēnēvam⁶ occūpāret.* 15. *Ut mīlites Rōmāni agros Gallōrum vastent.* 16. *Ut suis cōpiis⁷ regna concīliāret.*

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends.
2. If we loved (our) friends.
3. If we had loved (our) friends.
4. That we may harass the enemy.
5. That we might harass the enemy.
6. Let us love friends.
7. If you should import ripe corn.
8. If you had imported ripe corn.
9. Let us aid the boys.
10. Let us elect the man⁵ senator.⁵

Notes and Questions.

¹ *ut* in this Lesson is a *final conjunction* and is equivalent to *that, in order that*.

² Imitate the Examples in translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (65). Define the Indicative Mood (26). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of *jūvō*.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 16. Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

⁵ See 58.

⁶ See 25.

⁷ *suis cōpiis, with his troops.* See 54.



LESSON XXX.

REVIEW OF AMO.—TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of *āmō*.

71. *Two Accusatives.* A. & G. 52, 2, c, d: A. & S. 231: B. 217, RULE IX.: B. & M. 734: G. 333: H. 374.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesārem sententiam rōgāvit, he asked Caesar (his) opinion.*
2. *Caesar Aeduos frūmentum flāgītāvit, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*
3. *Rex pōpūlum sermōnem cēlāvit, the king concealed the conversation from the people.*

VOCABULARY.

<i>cēlō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>conceal.</i>
<i>commeō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>go back and forth.</i>
<i>expectō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>await, expect.</i>
<i>flāgītō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>demand.</i>
<i>grāvītōr,</i>	<i>adv.</i>			<i>severely.</i>
<i>mercātōr,</i>	<i>ōris,</i>			<i>trader, merchant.</i>
<i>mīnīmē,</i>	<i>adv.</i>			<i>least, by no means.</i>
<i>rōgō,</i>	<i>ārē,</i>	<i>āvī,</i>	<i>ātūm,</i>	<i>ask.</i>

saep̄, adv.

often.

sententiā, ae, f.

opinion.

sermo, ōnis, m.

discourse, conversation.

vulnērē, āre, āvi, ātūm,

wound.

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Lābiēnus suos² milītes³ exspectābat.⁴ 2. Galli mercātōres exspectāvēre.⁵ 3. Tītus nuntiat Gallos mercātōres exspectāvisse.⁶ 4. Milītes Sēquānos grāvīter vulnāvērunt. 5. Caesar princīpes Aeduōrum grāvīter accūsāt. 6. Dīcit Caesārem princīpes Aeduōrum grāvīter accūsāre. 7. Mercātōres ad⁷ Belgas commeant.⁷ 8. Mercātōres ād Belgas nōn saepe commeant. 9. Mīnime⁸ ād Belgas mercātōres saepe commeant. 10. Commeāte,⁹ mercātōres, ād Belgas. 11. Consul Germānos cōpiās flāgītābīt. 12. Consul Gallos frūmentum flāgītāt. 13. Sī consul Aeduos cōpiās flāgītēt. 14. Caesar consūlem sententiam rōgābīt. 15. Dīcit Caesārem consūlem sententiam rōgātūrum essē. 16. Tītum sermōnem nōn cēlābo. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem sermōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduos frūmentum flāgītēmus.¹⁰

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See LN. VI., NOTE 1.³ See LN. IV., NOTE 1.⁴ See LN. XVIII., NOTE 3.⁵ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)⁶ See LN. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and NOTE 3.⁷ ad — commeant, go-back-and-forth to, may be rendered visit.⁸ mīnime modifies saepe.⁹ See 47. •¹⁰ See LN. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? What are the Endings of the Infinitives? Of the Participles? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem? Which of the Subjunctive? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem?

LESSON XXXI.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO.

72. Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.

A. & G. 23, 3; 28, 1, PASSIVE, 3, a : A. & S. 141, 2; 147, 3, *Passive* : B. 44; 64, a, PASSIVE : B. & M. 262, 2; 333, PASSIVE VOICE : G. 205; 111 : H. 195, II.; 247, PERSON, PASS., MEANING.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *āmō*. A. & G. 31 : A. & S. 156 : B. 74, b : B. & M. 283 : G. 121 : H. 206.

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses differ in form only in the Personal Endings : e. g. *āmā-mūs*, we love; *āmā-mūr*, we ARE loved : *āmābī-tis*, you will love; *āmābī-mīnī*, you will BE loved. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has *bī*, and in the Passive, *bē* : e. g. *āmā-bī-s*, you will love; *āmā-bē-ris* or *rē*, you will BE loved. It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

<i>appellō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>name, call.</i>
<i>Castīcūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Casticus.</i>
<i>nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm,</i>	<i>our.</i>
<i>occultō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>hide, conceal.</i>

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements;¹ parse the nouns.

1. *Oppīda expugnābuntūr.* 2. *Nostri agri vastābuntūr.*
 3. *Hōmo igni² crēmābītūr.* 4. *Concīlium Gallōrum convōcābātūr.* 5. *Nostrā linguā³ Galli⁴ appellantūr.* 6. *Ariovistus rex atque amīcus appellābātūr.* 7. *Lucius Cassius consul⁵ amīcus⁴ appellābītūr.* 8. *Rex⁴ appellābēris.* 9. *Divitiācus frāter⁵ Dumnōrigis amīcus⁴ pōpūli Rōmāni appellābātūr.* 10. *Pāter Castīci pōpūli Rōmāni amīcus appellābātūr.* 11. *In tantā multītūdīne fūga occultātūr.* 12. *Orātiōne⁶ Lisci Dumnōrix Divitiāci frāter dēsīgnātūr.* 13. *Dumnōrix ab Aeduis⁶ accūsābātūr.* 14. *A Caesāre⁶ accūsābīmīnī.*

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

¹ See LN. X., NOTE 4, and LN. XII., NOTE 1.

² See 54.

³ See 54 and LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ See 25.

⁶ With verbs in the Passive Voice *the agent*, i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by the *Ablative with a, ab*; *the instrument*, i. e. the thing by means of which or with which anything is done, by the *Ablative without a preposition*: e. g. *He is overcome BY THE SOLDIER, a milite superatur*; *he is overcome BY the soldier's WEAPONS, talis militis superatur*.



LESSON XXXII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of *amō*. A. & G. 23, 2, b; 31: A. & S. 156: B. 76: B. & M. 281, 6, 4; 283: G. 122: H. 206.

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, f.

citadel.

comportō, arē, avi, atum,

collect.

enunciō, arē, avi, atum,

divulge, report.

equēs, itis, m.

horseman, cavalryman.

praetor, oris, m.

praetor.

Conjugate and give a Synopsis¹ of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduis² comportātum³ est. 2. Magna cōpia frūmenti ab Aeduis comportātā ērat. 3. Obsīdes Helvētiis⁴ dāti³ ērant. 4. Mūlti obsīdes Helvētiis ā Sēquānis dāti ērant. 5. Nullae⁵ arces expugnātae³ sunt. 6. Nostra consīlia³ hostībus⁴ ēnunciāta sunt. 7. Nostra consīlia hostībus ab Aeduis ēnunciāta ērant. 8. Caesar ā Rōmānis praetor⁶ creātus³ est. 9. Praetōres⁶ creati ērimus. 10. Nostri agri vastāti sunt. 11. Nostra oppīda expugnāta sunt. 12. Tantā multītūdo ēquītum sūpērāta³ est. 13. In tantā multītūdīne ēquītum nostra fūga occulta est. 14. Cōpiaē Caesāris ab Germānis ūno proelio⁷ sūpērātae sunt. 15. Equītes ā Caesāre grāvīter⁸ accūsāti sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected. 2. The citadels will have been stormed. 3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.² 4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls⁴ by the Germans. 6. Cassius had been elected praetor.⁶ 6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome. 7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.⁷ 8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans. 9. We have been severely⁸ censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

³ Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (64), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender, number, and case*.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See 24.

⁶ See 64. What was a praetor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

⁷ *ūno proelio, in a single battle.* See 54.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO** (*continued*).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of **āmō**. A. & G. 28, 1, c, and 3, b; 31: A. & S. 156: B. 64, b; 65; 66; 74, b; 76: B. & M. 283: G. 121; 122: H. 247, 3; 248; 206.

Conjugate the Imperatives; name the Stem and Ending of each verb; parse the Infinitives and Nouns.

1. Accūsārē, accūsāmīnī.¹ 2. Accūsātōr, accūsantōr. 3. Jūvārē, jūvātōr. 4. Vōcāmīnī, vōcantōr. 5. Dicit suum frātre^m creātūm essē.² 6. Dicit frātre^m Divitiāci dēsīgnātūm essē. 7. Dicit montē ā Lābiēn occūpārī. 8. Nēgāt³ nostrōs agrōs vastātōs essē. 9. Nēgāt cūm proxīmīs cīvītātīb^{us} pācem confirmātām essē. 10. Dicit regnūm īn cīvītate suā occūpātām essē. 11. Nunciāt Caesārem creātūm essē consūlem. 12. Nunciāt Cassiūm praetōrem creātūm essē. 13. Dicit Ariovistūm ā Rōmānīs rēgem appellātūm essē.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How is the Imperative used? (47)

² creātūm essē, *has been elected, or was elected.* See LN. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

³ nēgāt, *he says not; lit. he denies: HE SAYS our fields have NOT been laid waste.*

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed? Of the Indicative Passive? The Imperative Active and Passive? The Infinitives Active and Passive? The Participles Active and Passive?

How many Participles has a transitive verb? A. & G. 23, 1, c: A. & S. 148, 1, (2.): B. 54; 55: B. & M. 269: H. 196, II., 4, *fine print*.

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMO (*continued*).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of *āmō*. A. & G. 31: A. & S. 156: B. 74, b; 76: B. & M. 283: G. 121; 122: H. 206.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī hōmo crēmētūr, if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.*
2. *Sī hōmo crēmārētūr, if the man WERE BEING BURNED.*
3. *Sī hōmo crēmātūs sīt, if the man SHOULD HAVE BEEN BURNED; or if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.*
4. *Sī hōmo crēmātūs essēt, if the man HAD BEEN BURNED; or if the man WERE BURNED.*
5. *Sī sententiam rōgētūr, if HE SHOULD BE ASKED (his) opinion.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Sī Caesar sententiam¹ rōgātūs essēt.* 2. *Sī sententiam rōgātūs sīm.* 3. *Sī sententiam rōgārērīs.* 4. *Sī crēmātī essēmūs.* 5. *Sī Ariovistus rex² creatūs essēt.* 6. *Sī mīles vulnerētūr.* 7. *Sī non vulnerātūs essēs.* 8. *Sī Ariovistus amīcus pōpūli Rōmāni appellārētūr.* 9. *Sī obsīdes Rōmānis³ ā Gallis⁴ nōn dentūr.* 10. *Sī obsīdes Germānis āb Helvētiīs nōn dātī essent.* 11. *Sī cōpia frūmenti importētūr.* 12. *Sī cōpia frūmenti nōn importātā essēt.* 13. *Sī Divitiācus ā pōpūlo Rōmāno rex appellātūs essēt.* 14. *Sī rex atque amīcus ā Helvētiīs appellārērīs.* 15. *Sī sententiam rōgātī essēmūs.* 16. *Sī sententiam rōgātī ērītīs.* 17. *Sī rēges creatī essētīs.* 18. *Sī consules creatī essēmūs.*

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion.
2. If you were asked (your) opinion.
3. If you had been burned.
4. If Cassius had been elected consul.
5. If Cassius had not been called a friend of the Gauls.
6. If hostages should be given

to the Germans by the consul. 7. If the soldiers had not been wounded. 8. If we had not been wounded. 9. If an abundance of corn were being imported. 10. If you should be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 71.² See 64.³ See 39.

⁴ Which prepositions are used with the Ablative? (16) How is the agent of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin? (LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.) How is the instrument expressed? What is meant by the agent? By the instrument?



LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. Definition. A. & G. 35, 1: A. & S. 142, 4, (a.): B. 46: B. & M. 304: G. 211: H. 195, II., 2.

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation. A. & G. page 76, *mīror*: A. & S. 161: B. 93, *cōnor*; 55, *second sentence*: B. & M. 306, *second part*; 307: G. 141; 142: H. 225; 226.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cōnor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> , ¹	<i>attempt, try.</i>
<i>glōrior</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>glory, boast.</i>
<i>hortor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>exhort, urge.</i>
<i>laetor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>rejoice, exult.</i>
<i>mīror</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>admire, wonder at.</i>
<i>mōror</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>tarry, delay.</i>
<i>vāgor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>wander about.</i>
<i>pōpūlor</i> ,	<i>ārī</i> ,	<i>ātūs sūm</i> ,	<i>ravage, lay waste.</i>

¹ The principal parts of a deponent verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative*; e. g. *cōnor*, *cōnārī*, *cōnātūs sūm*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb.

1. Cōnāmur, cōnābāmur, cōnābīmur. 2. Glōriātus sum, glōriātus eram, glōriātus ero. 3. Sī hortētur, sī hortārētur. 4. Sī hortātus sis, sī hortātus esses. 5. Laetāre, laetāmīni, laetēmur.² 6. Dicit Caesārem laetātum essē. 7. Mirārī³ nōn possūmus. 8. Vāgārī³ cōnēmur.² 9. Vāgārī nōn pōtērīmus. 10. Caesar ād⁴ Rōmam mōrātus est. 11. Helvētīi agros Aeduōrum pōpūlābantur. 12. Ut vāgārentur.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort. 2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried. 3. If he should tarry, if he tarried. 4. If he had tarried near Rome. 5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva. 6. They can⁶ not rejoice. 7. They could⁶ not rejoice. 8. Let us try² to rejoice.

Notes.

¹ A complete Synopsis of cōnor, for example, is as follows: *Indicative*, cōnor, cōnābar, cōnābor, cōnātus sum, cōnātus eram, cōnātus ero; *Subjunctive*, cōner, cōnārer, cōnātus sim, cōnātus essem; *Imperative*, cōnāre, cōnātor; *Infinitives*, cōnārī, cōnātus essē, cōnātūrus essē; *Participles*, cōnans, cōnandus, cōnātus, cōnātūrus; *Gerund*, cōnandi; *Supines*, cōnātum, cōnātu.

² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

³ See 69.

⁴ ād with the name of a town may often be rendered *near*, *in the vicinity of*.

⁵ Render by the Imperfect Indicative.

⁶ *Can* and *could* in these and similar sentences are equivalent to *are able*, *were able*; translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of *possūm*, and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. 54, 3 : A. & S. 247 : B. 257, RULE XLII. : B. & M. 878 : G. 407 : H. 414, 2.

80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. 45, 5, *a-f*, 6 : A. & S. 201, 11-13 : B. 288, *a-f* : B. & M. 1407-1409 ; 1411 : G. 474, 1-4 : H. 345, II., III.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Puēri ōquis*¹ (79) *laetantur*, *boys rejoice* IN HORSES.
2. *Helvētīi suā victōriā*¹ (79) *glōriābantur*, *the Helvetii were boasting* BECAUSE OF *their* VICTORY ; or *the Helvetii were glorying* IN *their* VICTORY.
3. *Orgetōrix Casticum hortātur ūt regnum occūpet*,² *Orgetorix urges Casticus to seize the royal power.*
4. *Miles nōn laetētur, sī vulnērētur*,³ *the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.*
5. *Sī multi vulnērāti essent, nōn laetāti essēmus*, *if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.*
6. *Ariovistus fuit rex ēt Caesar fuit consul*,⁴ *Ariovistus was king and Caesar was consul.*

Analyze the sentences and parse.

1. *Impērātor milītībus bōnis laetātur.*
2. *Rōmāni suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur.*
3. *Sēquāni victōriā suā nōn glōriābantur.*
4. *Nēgat*⁵ *Sēquānos victōriā glōriātūros essē.*
5. *Milītes hortābimur ūt agros pōpūlentur.*
6. *Impērātor milītes suos hortātus est*⁶ *ūt agros Gallōrum pōpūlentur.*
7. *Dumnōrigem hortābor ūt regnum in*⁷ *suā cīvītate occūpet.*
8. *Sī igni*⁸ *crēmer, nōn laetēris.*
9. *Sī Cassius praetor*⁹ *creātus esset, laetātus essem.*
10. *Sī Caesar sermōnem*¹⁰ *milītes*¹⁰ *cēlet, laeter.*
11. *Sī dux milītībus*¹¹ *adesse*¹² *possit aetentur.*
12. *Hortēmur*¹³ *Helvētios ūt cūm proxīmis cīvītātībus pācem*

et amicitiam confirment. 13. Si Caesar multos obsides dedisset hostibus,¹⁴ hostes laetati essent. 14. Puer erat malus et puella erat bona. 15. Consul abest et praetor est aeger.⁹

Notes.

¹ In Examples 1 and 2 *equis* and *victoria* are the cause of the rejoicing and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative in accordance with the rule referred to in 79.

² Example 3 is a *complex sentence*, because it is made up of a *principal clause*, *Orgetorix Casticum hortatur*, and a *subordinate clause*, *ut regnum occūpet*. Observe that *ut occūpet* is rendered by the Infinitive *to seize*; lit. *that he may seize*.

³ Example 4 is a *complex sentence*; *principal clause*, *miles non laetatur*; *subordinate clause*, *si vulneretur*: *si* and *ut* are *subordinate conjunctions*; hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.

⁴ Example 6 is a *compound sentence*, because it is made up of clauses which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called *coördinate clauses*; and the conjunctions which connect them, *coördinate conjunctions*.

⁵ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ *hortatus est*, *has urged*.

⁷ See LN. XIII., NOTE 5. Which is this?

⁸ See 54.

⁹ See 64.

¹⁰ See 71.

¹¹ See 67.

¹² See 69.

¹³ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁴ See 39.

LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. 16, 2, *lěvis*, *acēr*, *b*, *Case-Forms*: A. & S. 108; 109; 113, 1; 114, 1: B. 156; 157, *lěvis*: B. & M. 193, RULES 1, 2; 196, II., *mītis*; 198, *acēr*: G. 81; 82: H. 152; 153; 154, *tristis*, 3.

VOCABULARY.

ālācēr,¹ *cris*, *crě*,

lively, *eager*.

brěvis,² *ě*,

short, *brief*.

cělěr,¹ *cělěrís*, *cělěrě*,

swift.

<i>difficilis</i> , ² ě,	<i>difficult, impracticable.</i>
<i>ēquestēr</i> , ¹ trīs, trě,	<i>of cavalry.</i>
<i>fācilis</i> , ² ě,	<i>easy, practicable.</i>
<i>fāmiliā</i> , ae, f.	<i>household, family.</i>
<i>fortis</i> , ² ě,	<i>brave, courageous, strong.</i>
<i>itēr</i> , <i>itīnērīs</i> , n.	<i>journey, route, march.</i>
<i>jūdicium</i> , ī, n.	<i>trial.</i>
<i>omnis</i> , ² ě,	<i>all, every.</i>
<i>tristis</i> , ² ě,	<i>sad.</i>

¹ Declined like *ācēr*.

² Declined like *lēvis*, *mītis*, *fācilis*, *tristis*.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ex omni¹ Galliā. 2. Cūm omnībūs cōpiīs. 3. Pēr omnēs urbēs. 4. Pēr tōtām² urbēm. 5. Equī sunt cělērēs.³ 6. Nĕgāt⁴ ēquōs essē cělērēs. 7. Sī ēquītēs fuissent cělērēs, rex laetātūs essēt.⁵ 8. Tempūs est brěvē. 9. Helvētīi oppidā suā omniā incendunt (*burn*). 10. Fuīt proeliūm ēquestrē. 11. Dicīt fūtūrūm essē proeliūm ēquestrē. 12. Sēquānī fuērunt tristes. 13. Itēr¹² ěrāt difficīlē. 14. Sī itēr sīt fācilē, laetēr.⁶ 15. Pūtō itēr essē fācilē. 16. Tītūs Lābiēnūs lĕgātūs⁷ suōs milītēs hortātūr ūt⁹ fortēs sint.⁹ 17. Orgētōrix ād jūdicium omnēm suām fāmiliām coēgīt (*brought*). 18. Orgētōrix Helvētiōs hortātūs est ūt¹⁰ dē finībūs suis cūm omnībūs cōpiīs exirent.¹⁰ 19. Virīs¹¹ fortībūs laetōr.

Notes.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 1.

² See 24.

³ See 64.

⁴ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁶ See LN. XXVI., Ex. 1 and LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁷ See 25.

⁹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

¹⁰ ūt — *exirent, to go out.*

¹¹ See 79.

¹² See A. & G. 11, III. 4, c : A. & S. 57 : B. 138 : B. & M. 104.

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

82. A. & G. 16, 3, *a, c*, 1, 2: A. & S. 111; 113, 2, 3; 114: B. *all of* 158: B. & M. *all of* 193: G. 83; 84; 85, 1-3: H. *all of* 155-158.

VOCABULARY.

audax, ācis,	<i>bold, audacious.</i>
conditio, ōnis, f.	<i>condition.</i>
contūmēliā, ae, f.	<i>insult.</i>
dīvēs, itīs,	<i>rich.</i>
fēlix, icīs,	<i>happy.</i>
flens, entīs,	<i>weeping.</i>
implōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>beseech, implore.</i>
injūriā, ae, f.	<i>injury.</i>
mūliēr, ēris, f.	<i>woman.</i>
ōriens, entīs,	<i>rising.</i>
pār, pārīs,	<i>equal.</i>
princeps, ipīs,	<i>first, chief.</i>
rēcens, entīs,	<i>recent.</i>
sōl, sōlis, m.	<i>sun.</i>
spectō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>look, front.</i>
vētūs, ēris,	<i>old, ancient.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Vētērēs causae. 2. Vētūs urbs¹ est Rōmā. 3. Mēmōriā vētērīs contūmēliae. 4. In pārēm conditiōnēm servitūtīs. 5. Rēcētiūm injūriārūm mēmōriā. 6. Mūliērēs ērant fēlicēs. 7. Mūliērēs flentēs Caesārēm implōrābant. 8. Helvētiū flentes pācēm pētiērunt (*sought*). 9. Hortēmūr² milītēs ūt³ ālacrēs et audācēs sint.³ 10. Belgae spectant īn⁴ ōrientēm sōlēm.⁵ 11. Lēgatiōnīs princīpēm⁶ lōcūm⁷ obtinēbant (*they held*). 12. Rōmānī dīvītēs fuērunt. 13. Germānī nōn pārēs sunt nostrīs milītībūs.⁸

Write in Latin.

1. There⁹ will be a battle of cavalry. 2. Our soldiers are brave. 3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave. 4. Geneva is an old town. 5. All¹⁰ are not happy. 6. Our leaders will be bold. 7. All cannot be¹¹ rich. 8. Weeping women will implore the consul. 9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalrymen.

Notes.

¹ See 64.² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

³ How is the Subjunctive with *ut* to be translated after verbs signifying *ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge*? ANSW. By the Present Infinitive. See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁴ *in, towards.*⁵ See B. 135: B. & M. 121: H. 60.⁶ *principem* is here used as an adjective; it is often a noun.⁷ How is *lōtus* declined in the Plural? See VY., LN. VIII.⁸ *militibus* is a *Dative*.⁹ See LN. XXV., NOTE 2, *last part*.¹⁰ *omnes*, like the English *all*, is often used substantively.¹¹ *cannot be, esse nōn possunt.*

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. 17, 1, *a*: A. & S. 122, 1-6; 124, 1-3; 125, 1: B. 161; 162; 163, *a*: B. & M. 214-218: G. 86; 88, 1: H. 160-162; 163, 1.

84. *Declension of Comparatives.* A. & G. 16, 3, *b*: A. & S. 110: B. 157, REMARK: B. & M. 197: G. 87: H. 154, 3, 4.

VOCABULARY.

<i>altus, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>high, deep.</i>
<i>fortūnā, ae, f.</i>	<i>fortune.</i>
<i>grāvis, ē,</i>	<i>heavy, grievous.</i>
<i>lātus, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>broad, wide.</i>

longē, adv.	by far.
miser, miserā, miserum,	wretched, pitiable.
nobilis, ē,	well-known, noble.
potens, entis,	powerful.
quam, adv.	than.
utilis, ē,	useful.

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Jūrā est mons¹ altissimū.² 2. Caesār dicit Jūrā essē montē altissimū. 3. Rhēnū est flūmēn lātissimū ēt altissimū. 4. Hōmīnī³ nobilissimō ac⁶ pōtentissimō ādērām. 5. Omnium⁴ fortissimī sunt Belgae. 6. Apūd Helvētiōs longē nobilissimū ēt ditissimū¹⁰ fuīt Orgētōrix. 7. Pēr trēs (three) pōtentissimōs pōpūlōs tōtīūs Galliae. 8. Nostrae filiae pulcherrimae sunt. 9. Milītēs hortēmūr ūt fortiōrēs sint.⁵ 10. Sī tempūs fuissēt brēviūs, nōn laetātūs essēm. 11. Milītēs fuērunt Caesārī ūtilissimī. 12. Dicit essē miseriōrēm grāviōremquē⁷ fortunām⁸ Sēquānōrūm quā⁹ rēliquōrūm Gallōrūm.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women. 3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhine is a very deep river. 8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

¹ What is the gender of **mons**? Of **Jūrā**?

² *Superlatives* may sometimes be rendered by the *positive* with *very*: e. g. **mons altissimū**, a *very high mountain*. They are declined like adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

³ 67.

⁴ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See LN. XX., NOTE 1.

⁷ What is the difference in force of **ēt**, **quē**, and **atquē**? See LN. XXIII.,

NOTE 2. What are appended words called? See VY., LN. XXIII., NOTE on *quē*, last part.

⁸ *fortūnām* is subject of *essē*.

⁹ When *quām* signifying *than* is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation *that*: e. g. *quām Rōmanōrūm*, *than THAT of the Romans*.

¹⁰ See General Vocabulary under *divēs* and *dis*.



LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

85. A. & G. 17, 1, *b-e*, 2, 3, *a*: A. & S. 125, 2-5; 126, 1: B. 163, *b-d*; 164, *a, b*: B. & M. 219-222: G. 88, 2-4; 89, REMARKS 1, 2: H. 163, 2, 3; 165; 166; 169, 1, 2; 170.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, iŭm, f.	<i>the Alps.</i>
cītēriōr, cītēriūs,	<i>hither.</i>
extrā, prep. w. acc.	<i>without, beyond.</i>
infēriōr, infēriūs,	<i>lower.</i>
primūs, ā, ūm,	<i>first.</i>
Sēgūsīānī, ōrūm, m.	<i>the Segusiani.</i>
Sēquānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>of the Sequani.</i>
sūpēriōr, sūpēriūs,	<i>higher, upper.</i>
ultēriōr, ultēriūs,	<i>farther.</i>

Translate and parse.

1. Mājōr¹ multītūdo Germānōrum² Rhēnum transībāt (*was crossing*). 2. Carrōrum² maxīmus nūmērus. 3. Cum maxīmo mīlītum² nūmēro. 4. Belgae pertīnent (*extend*) ād infēriōrem partem flūmīnis Rhēni. 5. Galli lōca sūpēriōra occūpant. 6. Lābiēnus summum montem³ occūpāvit. 7. Summus mons ā Lābiēno⁴ occūpātus est. 8. Nēgat summum montem ā Lābiēno occūpātum essē. 9. Milītes hortābīmur

ut summum montem occūpent. 10. Sī Lābiēnus summum montem occūpet, Caesar sit⁵ fēlicissīmus. 11. Iter p̄r prōvinciam est faciīlius.⁶ 12. Ager Sēquānus ērat optīmus⁷ tōtīus Galliae. 13. Caesar īn Galliam ultēriōrem p̄r Alpes⁸ contendit (*hastens*). 14. Cītēriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppīdum. 15. Segūsīāni sunt extrā prōvinciam prīmi.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of horses. 2. A larger number of cavalrymen. 3. To the upper part of the Rhone. 4. The soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain. 5. The top of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers. 6. The route through our province is most practicable. 7. I think (that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practicable. 8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

¹ In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be compared.

² Notice the different positions of the Genitive; what is the difference in force? See LN. III., NOTE 3.

³ *summum montem, the top of the mountain.*

⁴ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ *sit, would be.*

⁶ Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like *facilis*.

⁷ *optīmus*, sc. *āger*.

⁸ The gender of *Alpes* is an exception to what rule?



LESSON XLI. X

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

86. Dative with Adjectives. A. & G. 51, 6: A. & S. 222, 3: B. 245, RULE XXXIII.: B. & M. 860: G. 356:—H. 391.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs, the Belgae are nearest TO THE GERMANS.*
2. *Castrīs idōneūs lōcūs est, the place is suitable FOR A CAMP.*
3. *Deō sīmīlis est, he is like A GOD.*

VOCABULARY.

aetās, ātis, f.	age.
āmīcūs, ā, ūm,	friendly.
commūnis, ē,	common.
idōneūs, ā, ūm,	fit, suitable.
inīmīcūs, ā, ūm,	unfriendly, hostile.
pātriā, ae, f.	native land, fatherland.
pēriculōsūs, ā, ūm,	dangerous.
sīmīlis, ē,	like, similar.
sōlūm, ī, n.	ground, soil.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aquītānī sunt proximī prōvinciae. 2. Aquītānī sunt prōpiōrēs prōvinciae quān Itāliae. 3. Gēnēvā est oppīdūm proximūm Helvētiōrūm finībūs. 4. Extrēmūm oppīdūm Allobrōgūm est proximūmquē Helvētiōrūm finībūs Gēnēvā. 5. Castrīs nōn idōneūs omnīs lōcūs est. 6. Nēgāt castrīs idōneūm omnēm lōcūm essē. 7. Sī castrīs idōneūs lōcūs sīt, milītēs laetentūr.¹ 8. Nōn ēgō sūm idōneūs armīs. 9. Sī ēgō fuissēm idōneūs armīs, laetātūs essēm. 10. Dumnōrix Helvētiīs ērāt āmīcūs. 11. Dux inīmīciōr Dumnōrigī fuīt quān Caesārī. 12. Mātrī puellā est sīmīlis. 13. Nōn omnīs puēr est sīmīlis pātrī. 14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis. 15. Pātriae sōlūm omnībūs cārūm est. 16. Pōpūlō Rōmānō pēriculōsūm est proeliūm. 17. Omnī urbī lēgēs sunt ūtlēs. 18. Impērātōr suōs milītēs hortātūr ūt fortēs sint² et urbī Rōmae ūtlēs.

Write in Latin.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province.
 2. Ocelum was the furthestmost town of the hither province
 and nearest to the Alps. 3. If the place had been suitable
 for a camp, we should have rejoiced.³ 4. Let us urge the
 soldiers to be² useful to (their) fatherland. 5. The lieutenant
 was most friendly to the soldiers. 6. The daughter is more
 like (her) father than (her) mother. 7. I do⁴ not think (that)
 the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4. What kind of a sentence is this? (80)

² See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁴ See LN. X., NOTE 5.

LESSON XLII.

ADVERBS.

87. Definition. A. & G. 41: A. & S. 190, 2: B. 30: B. & M. 460: G. 15, IV., 1: H. 303.

88. Derivation. A. & G. 41, 1, *a*, *b*: A. & S. 192, II., 1, 2: B. 199, *b*, *c*: B. & M. 591; 592; 595: G. 90, 1-4: H. 333; 335, 1, 2.

89. Classification. A. & G. 41, 2, *a-e*: A. & S. 190, 3; 191, I.-III.: B. 175, *a-f*, REMARK: B. & M. 461, 1-6: H. 304, I.-IV.

90. Comparison. A. & G. 17, 4: A. & S. 194, 1, 2, 4: B. 174, *a-c*: B. & M. 462; 463: G. 91: H. 305.

91. Syntax. A. & G. 45, 3, *a*: A. & S. 277, I.: B. 327, RULE LXXIX.: B. & M. 996: G. 440, 2: H. 582.

VOCABULARY.

ācrītēr , adv.	<i>sharply, fiercely.</i>
audactēr , adv.	<i>boldly, courageously.</i>
cēlērītēr , adv.	<i>quickly, immediately.</i>
fācīlē , adv.	<i>easily, readily.</i>
fortītēr , adv.	<i>bravely, valiantly.</i>
grāvītēr , adv.	<i>heavily, severely.</i>
libērē , adv.	<i>freely, unreservedly.</i>
quā , adv.	<i>where.</i>

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortītēr¹ pugnāvērunt. 2. Sī milītēs fortiūs pūgnent, impērātōr laetētūr. 3. Rōmānī nōn ācriūs pugnābunt quām Galli.² 4. Germānī Helvētiōs fācīlē³ sūpērābunt. 5. Galli ā Caesārē nōn fācillīmē sūpērātī sunt. 6. Nunciāt Gallōs ā Caesārē nōn fācillīmē sūpērātōs essē. 7. Caesār Dumnōrigēm grāvissīmē accūsāvīt. 8. Caesār cēlērītēr concīliū dīmīttīt (*dismisses*). 9. Liscūs dicīt libēriūs⁴ atquē⁵ audāciūs. 10. Quā⁶ mīnīmā altītūdo flūmīnis ērāt. 11. Jūmentōrūm ēt carrōrūm quām⁷ maxīmūm nūmērūm coēmērē⁸ (*to purchase*). 12. Hostēs quām fortissīmē pugnābant. 13. Helvētīi Rōmānīs⁹ quām āmicissīmī fuērunt. 14. Sōlūm patriae civī quām cārissīmūm est.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing an adverb.* — **fortītēr** is an adverb of manner (89); derived from the adjective **fortis** (88); compared **fortītēr**, **fortiūs**, **fortissimē** (90); of the positive degree and modifies **pugnāvērunt** (91).

² What is the construction of **Galli**?

³ A. & G. 41, 1, d: A. & S. 192, 4, (b.): B. 174, d: B. & M. 596: G. 90, 4: H. 335, 4, 1).

⁴ **libērē** has no Superlative.

⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

⁶ As a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

⁷ **quām** modifying a Superlative *strengthens* it: e. g. **quām maxīmūm**, *as large as possible*; **quām fortissimē**, *as bravely as possible*.

⁸ (..) is the mark of *Diaeresis*; when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be *separated* in pronunciation: e. g. *coëmere* has four syllables; *coemere* would have only three.

⁹ See 86.

LESSON XLIII.

· VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation.
A. & G. 32: A. & S. 157: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 288: G. 123;
124: H. 207. See 27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50 of this book.

VOCABULARY.

mōneō, ¹	ērē, uī, itūm,	<i>advise.</i>
hābeō,	ērē, uī, itūm,	<i>have.</i>
prōhibeō,	ērē, uī, itūm,	<i>restrain, keep from.</i>

¹ Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like *mōneō*. For the *principal parts* let *ērē, uī, itūm* take the place of final *eō*: e. g. *hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb; name its elements.

1. Mōnēbātīs, mōnēbītīs, mōnuistīs. 2. Sī mōneāmūs,² sī mōnērēmūs, sī mōnuissēmūs. 3. Mōnē, mōnētē, mōnentō. 4. Mōnens, mōnītūrūs. 5. Mōnērē, mōnuissē, mōnītūrūs essē. 6. Ut ēquōs hābeāmūs.² 7. Ut rex urbēs multās ēt³ magnās hābeāt. 8. Multā castrā hābēbīmūs. 9. Lēgātūs multōs milītēs hābuērīt.⁴ 10. Hābētō, hābētōtē.⁵ 11. Hābens, hābītūrūs. 12. Hābērē, hābuissē, hābītūrūs essē. 13. Sī Helvētiōs ītīnērē⁶ prōhibeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs ītīnērē prōhibuissent. 15. Helvētiōs ītīnērē prōhibeāmūs.⁷ 16. Itīnērē Helvētīōs prōhibērē⁸ cōnantūr. 17. Itīnērē hostēs prōhibēbīmūs. 18. Milītēs ītīnērē hostēs prōhibērē cōnābuntūr. 19. Sī ītīnērē milītēs prōhibuissēmūs. 20. Legātī nostrōs vīrōs mōnuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had. 2. If you should have, if you had, if you had had. 3. Have ye, he shall have, they shall have. 4. To restrain, to have restrained, to be about to restrain. 5. If we should keep the soldiers from the town. 6. If we shall have kept the soldiers from the town. 7. Let us keep the enemy from the town. 8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLES.

³ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.

⁴ Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (42)

⁵ Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (47)

⁶ *Itinēre* is an *Ablative of Separation*. A. & G. 54, 1: A. & S. 251: B. 256, RULE XLI.: B. & M. 916: G. 388: H. 425.

⁷ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

⁸ See 69.

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? Of the Infinitives and Participles? How are the different Stems of a verb found? (28, 45, 50) What two uses has the Perfect Indicative? (43)



LESSON XLIV.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. Accusative of Time. A. & G. 52, 4, c: A. & S. 236: B. 220, RULE XI.: B. & M. 950: G. 337: H. 378. This answers the question, *How long?*

VOCABULARY.

dēleĉ, ēre, ēvī,	ētŭm,	destroy.
dōceĉ, ēre, uī,	doctŭm,	teach.
jŭbeĉ, ēre, jussī,	jussŭm,	command, order.
māneĉ, ēre, mansī,	mansŭm,	stay, remain.

mōveĉ, ěrě, mōvĭ, mōtŭm,	<i>move, remove.</i>
obtĭneĉ, ěrě, uĭ, obtentŭm,	<i>hold, obtain.</i>
possessiĉ, ōnĭs, f.	<i>possession.</i>
vĭcŭs, ĭ, m.	<i>village.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Germāni multos vĭcos dĕlēvērant. 2. Aliud¹ ŭter hābēbant nullum. 3. Quā² plŭrĭmas cĭvĭtātes hābēbant. 4. Allobrōges trans Rhōdānum vĭcos possessiōnesquē³ hābēbant. 5. Puēros⁴ littēras⁴ dōceāmus. 6. Dicĭt mātrem⁵ filias littēras dōcēre. 7. In Galliā ultĕriōre multos annos⁶ mānēbĭmus. 8. Caesar sĕnātōrem hortātur ŭt⁷ ĩn castris multos menses maneat.⁷ 9. Regnum ĩn Sĕquānis multos annos obtĭnuērat. 10. Divĭco lĕgātĭōnis lōcum princĭpem obtĭnēbat. 11. Sĭ ĩmpĕrātor castra mōveat, mĭlĭtēs fortius⁸ pugnent. 12. Castra⁹ movĕre¹⁰ cĕlĕrius nōn pōtuērunt.¹¹ 13. Itĭnĕrĕ¹² Helvētios prōhĭbĕre nōn pōtĕrunt.¹¹ 14. Helvētĭi suis finĭbus Germānos prōhĭbēbant. 15. Proxĭmum¹³ ŭter ĩn ultĕriōrem Galliam pĕr Alpes est. 16. Sĕd ĩn summo jŭgo duas (*two*) lĕgiōnes,¹⁴ quas (*which*) ĩn Galliā cĭtĕriōre proxĭme conscripserat (*he had enlisted*), ět omnia auxĭlia¹⁴ collōcāri¹⁵ jussit.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Which adjectives have their Genitive in *ĭūs* and Dative in *ĭ*? (24)

² See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

³ See LN. XXIII., VY., NOTE.

⁴ See 71.

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ How is *ut* — *māneat* to be translated? See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ From what adjective is *fortĭter* derived?

⁹ What does *castra* signify in the Singular?

¹⁰ See 69.

¹¹ How do *pōtuērunt* and *pōtĕrunt* differ from each other?

¹² See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹³ *proxĭmum*, *shortest*.

¹⁴ *lĕgiōnes* and *auxĭlia* are subjects of *collōcāri*. (53)

¹⁵ *collōcāri* with its subjects is object of *jussit*. (52)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

94. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation.
A. & G. 32: A. & S. 157: B. 79; 80: B. & M. 289: G. 125;
126: H. 208.

See also 73, a, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

contīneō, ēre, uī, contentūm,	<i>hem in, bound.</i>
dītio, ōnīs, f.	<i>dominion, power.</i>
ōceānūs, ī, m.	<i>ocean.</i>
rāpīnā, ae, f.	<i>plundering.</i>
servītus, ūtīs, f.	<i>slavery.</i>
tēneō, ēre, uī, tentūm,	<i>hold, keep.</i>
undīquē, adv.	<i>on all sides.</i>

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Una pars contīnētur¹ Gārumnā² flūmīne,³ Oceāno, finībus Belgārum. 2. Undīquē lōci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii contīnentur. 3. Summus mons⁵ ā Tīto Lābiēno tēnēbātur. 4. Nunciat summum montem ā hostībūs tentum essē. 5. Sī summus mons ā hostībūs teneātur, nostri milītēs quām acerrīme⁶ pugnent. 6. Aedui īn servītūte atquē īn dītīōne Germānōrum tenti sunt. 7. Caesar mēmōriā tēnēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesare rāpīnis⁷ prōhībēbātur. 9. Summus mons ā hostībūs tēnēri nōn pōtest.⁸ 10. Galli tēnēri īn servītūte nōn pōtērant.⁸ 11. Obsīdes multos annos īn servītūte tēnēbantur. 12. Sī multos annos īn servītūte tenti essēmus, nōn fēlīces fuissēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The top⁵ of the mountain will be held by Caesar. 2. The top of the mountain could⁸ not be held by Caesar. 3. He says (that) the top of the mountain was held by the Germans.

4. If Cassius should keep in memory. 5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country.
6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans.
7. They were held in slavery many years.⁹

Notes and Questions.

¹ Define the Passive Voice ? (72) What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice ? Name the three Stems of *contineo*. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed ?

² See 54.

³ See 25.

⁴ *lōci nātūrā*, by the character of their country.

⁵ *summus mons*, the top of the mountain ; lit., the highest mountain.

⁶ From *acriter* ; from what adjective is *acriter* derived ?

⁷ *rāpinis* ; translate by the Singular ; see LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ When *possum* governs a Passive Infinitive render it by *can*, if in the Present Tense ; by *could*, if in a Past Tense ; e. g. *tēnēri pōtēst*, can be held ; *tēnēri pōtērat*, could be held.

⁹ See 93.



LESSON XLVI.

DEPONENT VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation.
A. & G. 35 : A. & S. 161 : B. 46 ; 55 ; 93 : B. & M. 304 ; 308 :
G. 211 ; 143 ; 144 : H. 225, 1 ; 227.

VOCABULARY.

<i>intueor</i> , <i>ērī</i> , <i>intuītūs sūm</i> , ¹	<i>look at.</i>
<i>nē</i> , adv.	<i>not</i> , used with the Subjunctive and Imperative.
<i>nē</i> , conj.	<i>that not</i> ; after verbs of fearing, <i>that</i> ; used with the Subjunctive.
<i>polliceor</i> , <i>ērī</i> , <i>pollicītūs sūm</i> ,	<i>promise.</i>
<i>vēreor</i> , <i>ērī</i> , <i>vēritūs sūm</i> ,	<i>fear.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frumentum pollicentur.² 2. Aedui frumentum publice polliciti erant. 3. Vereor ne Aedui Romanis³ frumentum polliceantur.⁴ 4. Ne⁵ frumentum polliceamur.⁶ 5. Si Aedui frumentum maturum polliciti essent, Caesar felix fuisset. 6. Romani non hostem verentur sed angustias itineris. 7. Ne Divitiaci animum offenderet (*he should offend*) vereretur. 8. Nunciat⁷ Sequanos terram intueri. 9. Negat⁸ Romanos hostem veritos esse. 10. Solem intueri non possumus. 11. Ne solem intueamur. 12. Vereremur ne hostes agros nostros popularentur. 13. Veremur ne hostes agros nostros populentur. 14. Veremini ne hostes agros vestros populentur. 15. Romanis frumentum non polliciti sumus. 16. Romani Helvetiis obsides non pollicebuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising. 2. They have promised ripe corn. 3. He says that they have promised ripe corn. 4. He fears that the Romans will promise⁴ corn to our enemies.³ 5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls. 6. Let us not look at the men. 7. Let us not fear the difficulties of the route. 8. I fear that the route will be⁴ dangerous.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., VY., 1.

² Define a Deponent Verb. (77)

What Participles do Deponent Verbs have? What Infinitives?

³ See 39.

⁴ When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a *verb of fearing* which is in the Present Tense, render it by the *Future Indicative*: *ne Aedui polliceantur*, *that the Aedui will promise*.

⁵ *ne* is here an adverb.

⁶ See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

⁷ What is the object of *nunciat*?

⁸ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. 12, 1, 2: A. & S. 87; 88: B. 142; 143, REM. 2: B. & M. 137: G. 67; 68: H. 116, 1, 2; 118, (1).

97. *Declension of dōmūs.* A. & G. 12, 3, e: A. & S. 89: B. 143, REM. 8: B. & M. 144: G. 67, 2: H. 119.

VOCABULARY.

adventūs, ūs, m.	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
commōveo, ēre, commōvi, commōtum,	<i>move, disturb.</i>
conspectūs, ūs, m.	<i>sight; view.</i>
cornū, ūs, n.	<i>horn; of an army, wing.</i>
dextēr, dextrā, dextrum,	<i>right.</i>
dōmūs, ūs, f.	<i>house; dōmi, at home.</i>
ēquitātūs, ūs, m.	<i>cavalry.</i>
exercītūs, ūs, m.	<i>army.</i>
impētūs, ūs, n.	<i>attack.</i>
paenē, adv.	<i>almost.</i>
sempēr, adv.	<i>always.</i>
sustīneō, ēre, uī, sustentum,	<i>sustain, withstand.</i>

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesāris adventū.¹ 2. Helvētii Caesārīs adventū² commōti sunt. 3. In conspectū hostium. 4. Omnium³ ex conspectū. 5. Paenē in conspectū exercītūs nostri⁴ agri vastantur. 6. Cūm ēquitātū Helvētiōrum. 7. Magnum nūmērū ēquitātūs sempēr hābēbat. 8. Equitātūs sustinēbat hostium impētū. 9. Lābiēnus exercītūi⁵ Rōmāno prae-fuit. 10. Hostes impētūs milītum sustinēre nōn pōtuerunt. 11. Equitātū omnem praemittit (*he sends forward*) qui⁶ impētū hostium sustīneat.⁶ 12. Nē hostium adventū commōveāmur. 13. A dextro cornū; ād dextrum cornū. 14. Caesar dōmi fuit. 15. Sēquāni itinērē⁷ exercītum nostrum prōhibere cōnantur.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 16. How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another? (8) What is the *Stem-Ending* of each? What are the *Case-Endings* of the Fourth Declension?

² See 79.

³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁴ *nostri* modifies *exercitūs*.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ *qui* — *sustineat*, to withstand.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. 13, 1, NOTE, 2, 6: A. & S. 90, 1, REMARK 1: B. 144, NOTE; 145, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. all of 146; 147: G. 69, REMARKS 1, 2; 70: H. 120, 1, 2, 4; 121.

VOCABULARY.

<i>commeātūs</i> , ūs, m.	<i>supplies, provisions.</i>
<i>compārō</i> , āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>prepare.</i>
<i>diēs</i> , diēi, m.	<i>day.</i>
<i>fidēs</i> , fidēi, f.	<i>faith, pledge, promise.</i>
<i>pernīciēs</i> , pernīciēi, f.	<i>ruin, destruction.</i>
<i>prōfectio</i> , ōnis, f.	<i>departure.</i>
<i>rēs</i> , rēi, f.	<i>thing, affair.</i>
<i>spēs</i> , spēi, f.	<i>hope, expectation.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Cūm pernīciē¹ exercitūs. 2. Ad suam pernīciēm. 3. Uno diē. 4. Diem dicunt (*they appoint*). 5. Sinē spē. 6. In mēliōrem² spēm. 7. Magnam in spēm. 8. Magnas spēs habēmus. 9. Rēs Helvētiis³ enunciāta est. 10. Pūtat rēs Helvētiis enunciātas essē. 11. Omnes rēs ād prōfectiōnem compārātae sunt. 12. Caesar paucos diēs⁴ ād⁵ Vē-sontiōnem commeātūs causā⁶ mōrātur. 13. Caesar Gallis

fīdēm dābit. 14. Vēreor nē Caesar Helvētiis fīdēm det.⁷
 15. Sī Caesar Germānis fīdēm det, Rōmāni nōn laetentur.
 16. Caesar Divitiāco⁸ maxīmam fīdēm hābēbat. 17. Germānis parvam hābet fīdēm. 18. Caesāri fīdēm hābeāmus.⁹

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans. 2. He says (that) the affair has been reported to the Romans. 3. We had great expectations. 4. We shall prepare all things for the departure. 5. With the ruin of many cities. 6. We shall delay many days near⁵ Rome for the sake of provisions. 7. We fear that the leader will give⁷ a pledge to the Romans. 8. We have the greatest confidence in⁸ the Helvetii. 9. They have very little¹⁰ confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the Stem of *perniciōs*, *diēs*, *spēs*, *fīdēs*? When is the final Stem-Vowel short? What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension? Which nouns are complete in the Plural?

² See 34.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 93.

⁵ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 4.

⁶ See General Vocabulary under *causā*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ *Divitiāco* — *fīdēm hābēbat*, *had* — confidence IN *Divitiacus*; lit., *had* confidence TO *Divitiacus*. See 39.

⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁰ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.



LESSON XLIX.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation.
 A. & G. 33: A. & S. 158: B. 87; 88: B. & M. 202: G. 131; 132:
 H. 209; 241-248.

a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending ; this connecting vowel is **u** before **n**, elsewhere **i**. The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination **ō** ; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination **ē**.

b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (**ē**) between the Stem and Tense-Sign ; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (**e**) between the Stem and Ending.

c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending ; this is **a** in the First Singular, elsewhere **e**.

VOCABULARY.

contendō,	ērē,	contendī,	contentūm,	<i>hasten, march rapidly.</i>
dimitto,	ērē,	dīmisi,	dīmissūm,	<i>dismiss.</i>
gērō,	ērē,	gessi,	gestūm,	<i>carry, carry on.</i>
mittō,	ērē,	misi,	missūm,	<i>send.</i>
tollō,	ērē,	sustulī,	sublātūm,	<i>lift, take away.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb ; name its elements ; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar in Itāliam magnis itinēribus¹ contendit. 2. Caesar ad hostes contendit equitatumque omnem mittit.² 3. Caesarem hortemur ut ad hostes contendat. 4. Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. 5. Helvetii exercitum Rōmānum sub jugum³ miserunt. 6. Nunciat Helvetios exercitum Rōmānum sub jugum mississe. 7. Imperator celeriter concilium dimittit. 8. Consul spem fugae tollebat. 9. Tollē, consul, spem fugae. 10. Belgae cum Germanis continentē bellum gesserunt. 11. Si omnes res ad profectiōnem comparatae sint, in Galliam ulteriorem contendamus. 12. Veremur ut⁴ rex cum hostibus bellum gerat.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul. 2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul. 3. The Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.⁶ 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke. 5. The king will have taken

away the hope of flight. 6. The king had taken away the hope of flight. 7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *magnis itinēribus*, by long marches. See 54.

² Name the Stems of *mittō*. What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation? Of the First and Second? What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative?

³ When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why? See General Vocabulary under *jūgum*.

⁴ *ut* after verbs of *fearing* is to be rendered *that not*.

⁵ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁶ What question does "many years" answer? (93)



LESSON L.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE : THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. 33: A. & S. 158: B. 87; 88: B. & M. 293: G. 133; 134: H. 210.

See also 73, a, of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present* Indicative instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cingō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>cinxī</i> ,	<i>cinctūm</i> ,	<i>surround, encircle.</i>
<i>dēligō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>dēlēgī</i> ,	<i>dēlectūm</i> ,	<i>select, choose.</i>
<i>dīcō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>dixī</i> ,	<i>dictūm</i> ,	<i>say, tell.</i>
<i>dūcō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>duxī</i> ,	<i>ductūm</i> ,	<i>lead, draw.</i>
<i>vincō</i> ,	<i>ērē</i> ,	<i>vici</i> ,	<i>victūm</i> ,	<i>conquer.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Exercitus Rōmānus āb Helvētiis sūb jūgum missus est.*¹
2. *Orgētōrix dēligītūr.*¹
3. *Cassius lēgātus*² *dēligētūr.*
4. *Vix singūli carri dūcēbantūr.*
5. *Vix singūli carri pēr angustias*

ducti erant. 6. Paenē tōtum oppīdum flūmīne³ cingītūr. 7. Nē āb hostīb³ vincām³ur. 8. Sī āb hostīb³ victī essemus, victoriā⁴ glōriātī essent.⁵ 9. Sī Caesar exercītui⁶ praesit, nōn vincāmīnū. 10. Nōn impērātor² dēlīgēris. 11. Carri pēr angustias dūcī nōn possunt.⁷ 12. Germāni ā Rōmānis vincī nōn pōtērant.⁷ 13. Urbs cingītūr; urbs cingētūr. 14. Castra vallo¹⁰ cincta sunt. 15. Sī castra vallo cingātūr, nōn vincāmus. 16. Sī Caesar impērātor dēlīgātūr, omnes laetentur.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river.³ 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.³ 6. We fear that you will be conquered⁸ by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible⁹ will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that¹¹ Titus will not¹¹ send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? (72) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice? Which verbs have a Passive Voice? Ans. *Transitive Verbs*, i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (34)

² See 64.

⁴ See 79 and Ex. 2.

⁶ See 67.

⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ See 54.

³ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., EX. 5.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁹ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

¹¹ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

101. Learn the entire conjugation of **audiō**, Active and Passive.
A. & G. 34 : A. & S. 160 : B. 83 ; 84 : B. & M. 300 ; 301 : G. 135
-138 : H. 211 ; 212.

a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel **u** : e. g. **audi-u-nt**, **audi-u-nto** ; see also **99**, *b* and *c*.

VOCABULARY

audiō,	irē,	ivī,	itūm,	<i>hear.</i>
con-vēniō,	irē,	vēnī,	ventūm,	<i>come together, assemble.</i>
mūniō,	irē,	ivī,	itūm,	<i>fortify.</i>
per-vēniō,	irē,	vēnī,	ventūm,	<i>come to, arrive.</i>
vēniō,	irē,	vēnī,	ventūm,	<i>come.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Puēri multas res audiunt. 2. Multae res ā puēris audiuntūr. 3. Milītes impērātōrem audient. 4. Impērator ā milītibus audietūr. 5. Belgae tōtum oppīdum mūnivērunt.¹ 6. Tōtum oppīdum ā Belgis mūnītūm est. 7. Sī castra ā milītibus mūnītūm esset, hostes nōn vīcissent. 8. Mūniāmūs urbem Rōmam. 9. Caesar īn Galliam citēriōrem vēnīt.² 10. Vēnī, vīdī,³ vīcī.³ 11. Ad rīpam Rhōdāni omnes convēniunt. 12. Milītes hortātūr ūt ād rīpam Rhōdāni convēniant. 13. In fīnes Gallōrum pervēnērunt, quūm (*when*) proptēr vulnēra milītum paucos dies⁴ mōrātī sunt. 14. Helvētīi īn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnērant⁵ ēt agros pōpūlābantūr.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things. 2. Many things are heard by the soldiers. 3. The ambassador will be heard.

4. The Romans came into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a walled town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We came, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural?
- ² How does *vēnit* differ from *vēnit* in meaning?
- ³ *vidi* from *videō*; *vici* from *vincō*.
- ⁴ See 93.
- ⁵ How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action? (42)
- ⁶ How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action? (36)
- ⁷ How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another?



LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN IO.

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of *cāpiō*.
A. & G. 30, 3, *h*; 33: A. & S. 159: B. 92: B. & M. 294-297:
G. 139; 140: H. 221-223.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cāpiō</i> ,	<i>capērē</i> ,	<i>cēpi</i> ,	<i>captūm</i> ,	<i>take, capture.</i>
<i>cūpiō</i> ,	<i>cūpērē</i> ,	<i>cūpivī</i> ,	<i>cūpītūm</i> ,	<i>desire.</i>
<i>fāciō</i> ,	<i>fācērē</i> ,	<i>fēcī</i> ,	<i>factūm</i> ,	<i>make, do; Itēr fācērē, to march.</i>
<i>fōdiō</i> ,	<i>fōdērē</i> ,	<i>fōdī</i> ,	<i>fossūm</i> ,	<i>dig.</i>
<i>fūgiō</i> ,	<i>fūgērē</i> ,	<i>fūgī</i> ,	<i>fūgītūm</i> ,	<i>flee.</i>
<i>jāciō</i> ,	<i>jācērē</i> ,	<i>jēcī</i> ,	<i>jactūm</i> ,	<i>throw, hurl.</i>
<i>rāpiō</i> ,	<i>rāpērē</i> ,	<i>rāpuī</i> ,	<i>raptūm</i> ,	<i>seize, plunder.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Rōmānī multa oppīda cēpērunt.* 2. *Multa oppīda ā Rōmānis captā sunt.* 3. *Helvētīi magnas possēssiōnes cūpient.*

4. Magnae possessionēs ab Helvētiis cūpientūr. 5. Nostri milītes tēla īn hostes jāciēbant.¹ 6. Germāni castra Rōmānōrum rāpuērunt. 7. Germāni magnam fossam fōdērant. 8. Fossas multas ēt magnas fōdērīmūs. 9. Fūgītē,² milītes,³ īn urbem. 10. Dux nūciat hostes⁴ oppīdum captūrōs⁵ essē. 11. Lēgātus dixit oppīdum ā milītibus captūm essē.⁶ 12. Una pars īnītium ā flūmīne Rhōdāno cāpīt. 13. Lēgātus vērētūr nē lōcus ex internēcīōne exercītūs nōmen cāpiāt.⁷ 14. Helvētii pēr prōvinciam nōstram īter faciēbant. 15. Helvētii pēr agrum Sēquānōrum īter īn Aeduōrum fīnes faciēnt. 16. īter faciāmūs īn fines Germānōrum. 17. Lēgātus milītes hortābātūr ūt īter cēlērīus⁹ faciērent.⁸ 18. Milītes īter cēlērīus faciēre nōn possunt.

Notes.

¹ Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form ; compare sentences 3 and 4.

² See 47.

³ See LN. V., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 53.

⁵ Why *captūrōs* and not *captūrūs* ?

⁶ *captūm esse*, *had been taken*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁹ *cēlērīus*, an *adjective*, modifying *īter*.



LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS : THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Dependent Verbs. A. & G. 35, 1 : A. & S. 161 ; 158 – 160 : B. 93 : B. & M. 309 ; 310 : G. 145 – 148 : H. 228 – 230.

104. *Ablative with certain Deponents.* A. & G. 54, 6, *d* : A. & S. 245 : B. 258, *a* : B. & M. 380 : G. 407 : H. 419, *i*.

VOCABULARY.

mētior,	mētīrī,	mensūs	sūm,	<i>measure, deal out.</i>
nītor,	nītī,	nīsūs or nixūs	sūm,	<i>strive, endeavor.</i>
ōrior,	ōrīrī,	ortūs	sūm,	<i>rise, begin.</i>
pōtior,	pōtīrī,	pōtītūs	sūm,	<i>get possession of, obtain.</i>
prōficiscor,	prōficiscī,	prōfectūs	sūm,	<i>set out, depart.</i>
sēquor,	sēquī,	sēcūtūs	sūm,	<i>follow.</i>
ūtor,	ūtī.	ūsūs	sūm,	<i>use, make use of.</i>

Conjugate ; name the Stems;¹ give synopses; parse.

1. Caesar hostes sēquītūr. 2. Caesar paucos dies⁸ mōrātūs² hostes sēcūtūs est. 3. Liscus cūm lēgiōnībus ē castris prōfectūs est. 4. Cāesar mātūrat āb urbe prōficiscī. 5. Belgae āb extrēmīs Galliae fīnībus⁴ ōriuntūr. 6. Milītes frūmento nōn ūtentūr. 7. Frūmento ūtī⁵ hōmīnes nōn pōtērant. 8. Pāce ūtī nōn possumus. 9. Impēdimentis castrisquē nostri⁶ pōtītī sunt. 10. Nītēbantūr ūt impērio pōtīrentūr. 11. Nītentūr ūt⁷ tōtīus Galliae impērio pōtiantūr.⁷ 12. Galli nītuntūr ūt impēdimentis pōtiantūr. 13. Dux vīrīs⁸ frumentum mētītūr. 14. Liscus milītībus frumentum nōn mensus ērat. 15. Nītāmūr ūt tōtīus Itāliae impērio pōtīāmūr.

Write in Latin.

1. Liscus will follow the enemy. 2. Our soldiers followed the Gauls. 3. The Gauls were following our army. 4. When I shall have set out from the city. 5. We shall make use of the corn. 6. The lieutenant is striving to get possession of⁷ the camp. 7. Let us strive to get possession of⁷ the baggage. 8. They attempt to get possession of⁵ the camp. 9. The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *The Present Stem* of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending **ri** in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and the Ending **i** in the Third (cf. 28): e. g. HORTĀRĪ, VĒRĒRĪ,

pōriri, and *ūt* are Present Infinitives ; *HORTA*, *VĒRE*, *POTI*, and *ūt* their Present Stems.

The *Supine Stem* of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending *ūs* (cf. 50) : e. g. *HORTĀTūs*, *VĒRĪTūs*, *PŌTITūs*, and *ŪSūs* are Perfect Participles ; *HORTĀT*, *VĒRĪT*, *PŌTIT*, and *ŪS* their Supine Stems.

² *mōrātūs*, having delayed.

³ *dies*, why in the Accusative ?

⁴ *finibūs*, limits. .

⁵ See 69.

⁶ *nostri*, our men.

⁷ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ See 39.

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs ? What is a Deponent Verb ? What is the derivation and meaning of *deponent* ? See under *dēpōno*, General Vocabulary.



LESSON LIV.

GENERAL EXERCISE : PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. 55, 3, *b* : A. & S. 237, REM. 4 : B. 221, RULE XII. : B. & M. 938 : G. 410 : H. 379, 3, 1).

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. 55, 3, *c, d* : A. & S. 221, REM. 3 ; 254 : B. 249, RULE XXXVII. : B. & M. 932 ; 933 : G. 412 : H. 421, I., II. ; 424, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. 55, 3, *a* : A. & S. 255, REMARK 1 : B. 254, RULE XXXIX. : B. & M. 941 ; 943 : G. 411 : H. 421, I., II. : 424, 2.

a. 105 answers the question *Whither ?* or *To what place ?* 106, *Where ?* or *In what place ?* 107, *Whence ?* or *From what place ?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesar Gēnēvam (105) contendit, Caesar hastened TO GENEVA.
2. Liscus Aquillēlae (106) fuit, Liscus was IN AQUILEIA.
3. Cassius Rōmā (107) vēnit, Cassius came FROM ROME.
4. Divitiācus plūrimūm dōmī pōtērat, Divitiacus was very powerful AT HOME.

VOCABULARY.

dŏmŭs, ŭs and ī, f.	house, home : dŏmī, at home ; dŏmŭm, home, homeward ; dŏmō, from home.
nīhīl (an indecl. neuter noun),	nothing.
Noviodŭnŭm, ī, n.	Noviodunum.
plŭrīmŭs, ā, ŭm,	most : plŭrīmŭm possē, to be very powerful.
prae-mittō, ērē, mīsi, missŭm,	send forward.
rē-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm,	return.
Suēvi, ōrŭm, m.	the Suevi.
trā-dŭcō, dŭcērē, duxī, ductŭm,	lead across.

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Consŭles Rŏmae plŭrīmos¹ annos² fuērunt. 2. Rŏmā vērērunt lēgāti Gēnēvam. 3. Divitiācus plŭrīmum³ dŏmī⁴ atquē īn rēliqŭā Galliā pŏtērat.³ 4. Impērātor omnem ēquī-tātum Noviodŭnum praemisit. 5. Dŏmŭm mittam pueros mālos. 6. Suēvi ād rīpas Rhēni vērērunt ēt dŏmum rēvertē-bantŭr. 7. Nītēmur ūt Norēiam rēvertāmŭr. 8. Sī Rŏmā prŏfīciscāmŭr,⁵ nŏn dŏmŭm rēvertāmŭr. 9. Vērēmŭr ūt⁶ nostri āmīci Rŏmae multos dies māneant.⁶ 10. Helvētii jām pēr angustias ēt fīnes Sēquānŏrum suas cōpias trāduxērunt ēt īn Aeduŏrum fines pervērērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many¹ days.² 2. The friends will come home. 3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome. 4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva. 5. He fears that we shall not⁶ return⁶ home. 6. Let⁷ us return home. 7. They will attempt to return to Geneva. 8. He was not able to return home. 9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly⁸ they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.² See 93.³ See Ex. 4.⁴ How is *dōmūs* declined? (97)⁵ How is the Present Subjunctive with *si* translated? (LN. XXIX., Ex. 1.)⁶ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4 and LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.⁷ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.⁸ See LN. LII., NOTE 9 and LN. XXXVI., Ex 5.

LESSON LV.

NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*, the declension of *ūnūs*, *duō*, *trēs*, and *millē*. A. & G. 18, 1, *a-e*: A. & S. 117, I.; 118, 1, 2, 6; 119: B. 167; 168, REM. 1-5: B. & M. 201-204; 206; 207: G. 92-94; 308: H. 171; 172; 174-179.

109. *Extent in Space.* A. & G. 52, 4, *c*: A. & S. 236: B. 220, RULE XI.: B. & M. 958: G. 335; 336: H. 378. This answers such questions as *How far?* *How deep?* *How high?* *How wide?* *How long?*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Castrā āb urbē millā passuūm octō ābsunt, the camp is EIGHT MILES distant from the city.*
2. *Flūmēn pēdēs vīgintī altūm est, the river is TWENTY FEET deep.*
3. *Mons pēdēs nongentōs altūs est, the mountain is NINE HUNDRED FEET high.*

VOCABULARY.

altēr, altērā, altērūm,
lātūs, ā, ūm,
longūs, ā, ūm,
passūs, ūs, m.

one of two, the other.

wide.

long.

step, pace; millē passuūm, a mile; lit,
a thousand of paces.

pēs, pēdis, m.	foot.
pōnō, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm,	place, put; castrā pōnērē, to pitch a camp.
vīgiliā, ae, f.	watch; dē primā vīgiliā, in the first watch.

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies; they must be learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmēn est pēdes quadrāgintā trēs lātum.¹ 2. Mons dēcēm miliā² trēcentos pēdes altus est. 3. Fossa pēdes trēcentos longa est, sex pēdes alta. 4. Fossa pēdes quindēcīm lāta est. 5. Milītes duas fossas quindēcīm pēdes lātas fōdērunt. 6. Caesar dōmum³ tertiam⁴ lēgiōnem mīsīt. 7. Dē tērtiā vīgiliā⁵ centūm ēt trīgintā quinquē milītes praemittit. 8. Miliā passuum⁶ triā'āb urbe castra pōsuīt. 9. Oppīda ād⁷ quadrāgintā ēt vīcos ād quadringentōs incendunt. 10. Erant ītīnēra duō; ūnum pēr Sēquānos; altērūm pēr prōvinciam nostram. 11. Summa⁸ ērat cāpītūm Helvētiōrūm⁹ miliā dūcentā ēt sexāgintā triā. 12. Cīrcīter miliā hōmīnum centūm ēt trīgintā sūperfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from Rome.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What does *lātum* modify? What is it modified by?

² Spelled also with two l's: *milliā*.

³ See 105.

⁴ What kind of a numeral is *tertiā*?

⁵ The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named *prima vigilia, secunda vigilia, tertia vigilia, quarta vigilia*.

⁶ A Roman pace (*passus*) as a measure of length was about five feet.

⁷ *ad* with numerals signifies *about*.

⁸ *summa*, the sum total.

⁹ *capitum Helveticorum*, of the *Helvetii*; lit. of the heads of the *Helvetii*.



LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. 14, 2, d: A. & S. 91: B. 151: B. & M. 176: H. 125; 126.

111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. 55, 1: A. & S. 253: B. 252, RULE XXXVIII.: B. & M. 949: G. 392: H. 426. The *Ablative of Time* answers the questions *When? At what time? Within what time?* What question does the *Accusative of Time* answer? See 93.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Diē septimō pervēnit*, he arrived ON THE SEVENTH DAY.
2. *Proximā noctē castrā movit*, THE NEXT NIGHT he broke up camp.

VOCABULARY.

<i>dī-vidō, vidērē, vidī, visum,</i>	<i>divide, separate.</i>
<i>in-cōlō, cōlērē, cōluī, cultum,</i>	<i>inhabit, dwell.</i>
<i>jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n.</i>	<i>oath.</i>
<i>lācus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>lake.</i>
<i>mensis, is, m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
<i>pōtens, pōtentis, adj.</i>	<i>able, powerful.</i>
<i>prō, prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>before, for.</i>
<i>respublicā, rēipublicae, f.</i>	<i>republic, commonwealth.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. *Galli Rōmānis¹ jusjūrandum dēdērunt.*
2. *Dixit Gallos Rōmānis jusjūrandum dēdisse.²*
3. *Multas res jūrējūrando³*

sanxērunt (*they ratified*). 4. In⁴ rempubīcam lēgātus sex lēgiōnes duxit. 5. Prō rēpublīca; prō castris. 6. Pēr trēs pōtentissīmos pōpūlos tōtius⁵ Galliae. 7. In fīnes Lingōnum die quarto pervēnerunt. 8. Proxīma nocte dē quarta vīgīlia⁶ castra mōvērunt. 9. Proxīmo die Caesar ē castris cōpias suas ēduxit. 10. Sōlis occāsū suas cōpias Ariovistus īn castra rēduxit. 11. Dōmi⁷ mansērunt septēm menses.⁸ 12. Quadrāgintā trēs annos regnāvit. 13. Nītāmur⁹ ūt sōlis occāsū prōfīciscāmur.¹⁰ 14. Gallia est¹¹ omnis dīvisa¹¹ in partes trēs, quārum (*of which*) ūnam¹² incōlunt Belgae, āliam¹² Aquītāni,¹³ tertiam¹² Galli.¹³ 15. A lācu Lemanno ād montem Jūram fossam vīgintī pēdes¹⁴ lātā fōdit. 16. Dē tertia vīgīlia cūm lēgiōnībūs tribus ē castris prōfectus est. 17. Dīcit hostes sūb monte castra pōsuisse mīlia¹⁴ passuum āb nostris castris octō.¹⁵

Notes.

¹ See 39.² See LN. XVII.³ See 54.⁴ in, against.⁵ Which adjectives are declined like *tōtus*? (24)⁶ See LN. LV., NOTE 5.⁷ See 106.⁸ See 93.⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.¹⁰ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.¹¹ est — *divisa* is the same as *divisa* — est.¹² Understand *partem*.¹³ Subject of *incōlunt* understood.¹⁴ See 109.¹⁵ octō modifies *mīlia*.

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of *ēgō*, *tū*, *suī*. A. & G. 19, 1-3, *a, e*: A. & S. 132, 1; 133, 4; 139, 1-3: B. 171; 172, *a, b*, REM. 2; 173, *a*: B. & M. 230-232; 234; 236: G. 97-100: H. 182; 184, 1, 4, 5, 7, 9; 185.

Translate and parse.

1. Egō¹ sum mālus² sēd tū es bōnus. 2. Egō vōs sūb jūgum mittam. 3. Nōs vōbīs³ āmīci sūmus. 4. Nūnciat nōbīs tē vēnisse. 5. Egō dē prīma vīgīlia prōfectus essem, sī tū vēnisses. 6. Nostrā consīlia hostībūs ēnūnciantur. 7. Obsīdes intēr sēsē⁴ dant. 8. Intēr sē jusjūrandum dant. 9. Omnes linguā,⁵ instītūtis,⁶ lēgībūs⁶ intēr sē⁵ diffērunt (*differ*). 10. Helvētīi suīs finībūs⁷ Germānōs prōhībēbant. 11. Caesar suōs milītes īn Galliam mittet sēd īn prōvinciam nostrōs.⁸ 12. Tuūs filiūs īn Galliam cītēriōrem īter faciēt.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman but you are a Gaul. 2. He will announce to you (that) we have come. 3. Your plans will be reported to us. 4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other. 5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other. 6. I shall send my soldiers home⁹ but yours into Gaul. 7. You will be friendly to us. 8. I fear that you will not¹⁰ be¹¹ friendly to us.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing a pronoun.* — *ēgō* is a personal pronoun; declined, *ēgō, meī, mīhī, mē, mē*; Plural, *nōs, nostrūm* or *nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs*; made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of *sūm*; rule (see 32).

² See 64.

³ See 86.

⁴ *inter sēsē*, to each other; lit. among themselves.

⁵ *inter sē*, from each other.

⁶ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ *nostrōs*, ours: sc. *milītes*.

⁹ See 105.

¹⁰ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

¹¹ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of *hic, illē, istē, ipse, is, idēm.* A. & G. 20, 1, 2: A. & S. 134, REM. 6; 135: B. 173, b, 1-3: B. & M. 289; 243: G. 101; 102: H. 186, I.-VI.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōrūm¹ omnium fortissīmi sunt Belgae. 2. Hī omnes linguā, instītūtis, lēgibus inter sē diffērunt. 3. Eōrum² unā pars īntium cāpit ā flūmīne Rhōdāno. 4. Mīnime³ ād eōs mercātōres⁴ saepe commeant. 5. Eī filiam suam īn matrī-mōnium dat. 6. Is sībī⁵ lēgatiōnem ād civitātes suscēpit. 7. Eā res est⁶ Helvētiis ēnunciāta. 8. Eōdēm die⁷ cūm duābūs⁸ lēgiōnibus prōfīciscētur ēt iīs⁹ dūcibus. 9. Ipsē¹⁰ ex Helvētiis uxōrem hābet. 10. Ipsī īn eōrum¹¹ finibus bellum gērunt. 11. Milia¹² passuum triā⁸ āb eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iisdēm¹³ nostra consilia hostibus ēnunciantur. 13. Ipsē dē quarta vīgilia eōdēm ītinēre¹⁴ ād eōs contendit ēquītātumque¹⁵ omnem antē sē mittit.

Notes.

¹ Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. *hi omnes differunt*, *all THESE differ*; *ad has suspiciones*, *to THESE suspicions*. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

² *is* is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person*, and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of *he, she, it*; e. g. *is sibi suscepit*, *HE took upon himself*; *ad eos*, *to THEM*; *in eorum finibus*, *in THEIR territory*; *ejus milites*, *HIS soldiers*; *ei dat*, *he gives TO HIM*.

³ *minime* modifies *saepe*.

⁴ See 32.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ *est enunciata* = *enunciata est*.

⁷ See 111.

⁸ See 108.

⁹ Is **iis** used substantively or adjectively?

¹⁰ **ipsē** — **hābet**, *he himself has.*

¹¹ See NOTE 2.

¹² See 109.

¹³ When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word *one, man, men, persons, or soldiers*, if masculine; *thing or things*, if neuter: e. g. **hic est fortis**, *THIS ONE is brave*, or *THIS MAN is brave*; **ab iisdēm**, *by THE SAME PERSONS*; **idēm cōnantur**, *they attempt THE SAME THING.*

¹⁴ **eodēm itinēre**, *by the same route.*

¹⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. 21, 1, *e*: A. & S. 136: B. 173, *c*, REM. 1: B. & M. 245: G. 103: H. 187, 1, 3.

115. Agreement. A. & G. 48: A. & S. 206: B. 278, RULE LIII.: B. & M. 688; 684: G. 615; 616: H. 445, 1, *w. fine print.*

EXAMPLES.

- Aquitānia** **ad eam partem Oceāni**, **quae est ad Hispāniam**, **pertinet**, *Aquitania extends to that PART of the Ocean WHICH is near Spain.*
- Flūmīne Rhēno**, **quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit**, *by the river RHINE, WHICH separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans.*
- Proximīquē sunt Germānis**, **quibuscum¹ bellum gērunt**, *and they are very near TO THE GERMANS, with WHOM they carry on war.*

Analyze and parse.

- Proximīquē sunt Germānis**,² **quī³ trans Rhēnum incōlunt.**
- Ad montem Jūram**, **quī fines Sēquānōrum āb Helvētiis dīvidit.**
- Ab Ocēlo**, **quōd est citēriōris prōvinciae**

oppidum⁴ extrēmum. 4. Allobrōges, quī trans Rhōdānum vicos possessionesquē habēbant, ad Caesārem vēniunt. 5. Vōcat Castīcum, cūjūs⁵ pāter regnum multos annos⁶ obtīnuērat. 6. Pontem,⁷ quī erat ad Gēnēvam, jubet rescindi.⁸ 7. Undīque lōci nātūrā⁹ Helvētii continentur: ūna ex parte¹⁰ flūmīne¹¹ Rhēno¹² lātissīmo atquē altissīmo, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit; altera¹³ ex parte monte Jūrā altissīmo, quī est intēr Sēquānos ēt Helvētios; tertiā¹⁴ lacu Lemanno ēt flūmīne Rhōdāno, quī prōvinciam nostram āb Helvētiis dīvidit.

Write in Latin.

1. They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the Garonne. 2. The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 3. He summons Titus, whose brother held the sovereignty many years. 4. The Germans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva. 5. He came with the very¹⁵ soldiers whom we have seen. 6. He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large number.

Notes.

¹ Observe that **cūm** is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal Pronouns.

² See 36.

³ *Form for parsing a relative.* — **quī** is a Relative Pronoun; declined, *quī, quae, quōd, cūjus*, etc. (*give its entire declension*); made in the Masculine Plural to agree with its antecedent **Germānis** (see 115); and in the Nominative, because it is the subject of **incōlunt** (32).

⁴ See 64.

⁵ **cūjūs**, whose.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ **ūna ex parte**, on one side.

¹¹ See 54.

¹² See 25.

¹³ **alterā**, second.

¹⁴ **tertiā**, sc. **ex parte**.

¹⁵ Translate *the very* by the proper case of **ipsē**.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives **quis** and **quī**; of the Indefinites **aliquis** and **quis**. A. & G. 21, 1, *a*, 2, *d*: A. & S. 137, 1; 138, 1: B. 173, *d*, REM. 1, *e*, 1, 3: B. & M. 246; 249-251; 1041, *second part*: G. 104, REMARK; 105: H. 188, I. II., 1, 2; 189-191, 1, 2.

a. **alī-quis** is used both as a *substantive* and as an *adjective*; as a *substantive* it is declined as follows:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> alī-quis,	alī-quid,
	<i>Gen.</i> alī-cūjūs,	alī-cūjūs,
	<i>Dat.</i> alī-cuī,	alī-cuī,
	<i>Acc.</i> alī-quēm,	alī-quid,
	<i>Abl.</i> alī-quō,	alī-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> alī-quī,	
	<i>Gen.</i> alī-quōrūm,	
	<i>Dat.</i> alī-quībūs,	
	<i>Acc.</i> alī-quōs,	
	<i>Abl.</i> alī-quībūs.	

As an *adjective* it is declined:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
SING.	<i>Nom.</i> alī-quis and alī-quī,	alī-quā,	alī-quōd,
	<i>Gen.</i> alī-cūjūs,	alī-cūjūs,	alī-cūjūs,
	<i>Dat.</i> alī-cuī,	alī-cuī,	alī-cuī,
	<i>Acc.</i> alī-quēm,	alī-quām,	alī-quōd,
	<i>Abl.</i> alī-quō,	alī-quā,	alī-quō.
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i> alī-quī,	alī-quae,	alī-quā,
	<i>Gen.</i> alī-quōrūm,	alī-quārūm,	alī-quōrūm,
	<i>Dat.</i> alī-quībūs,	alī-quībūs,	alī-quībūs,
	<i>Acc.</i> alī-quōs,	alī-quās,	alī-quā,
	<i>Abl.</i> alī-quībūs,	alī-quībūs,	alī-quībūs.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quis mē vocat? WHO calls me?
2. Quē m vidisti? WHOM did you see?
3. Quid dōmum nōn vēnērunt? WHY have they not come home?
4. Aliquē m ad mē mittent, they will send SOMEBODY to me.
5. Aliquid accidit, SOMETHING has happened.
6. Si quid accīdat Rōmānis, if ANYTHING should happen to the Romans.

Parse the pronouns.

1. Quis vōs vocāvit? 2. Quē m video? 3. Aliquē m vīdi.
4. Aliquōs ad eū m mīsērunt. 5. Aliquē m locum occūpāvit.
6. Cū m āliquisbūs princīpum vēnit. 7. Si quis vēniat, laeter.
8. Quid nōn dōmī fuisti? 9. Quae est mulier quae vēnit?
10. Si quid mīhi accīdat, nōn laetēris. 11. Si quid. Rōmānis accīdat, nōn fortītēr pugnent.
12. Aliquē m ad tē mīt-tam. 13. Aliquis dixit hunc essē consūlem.
14. Eū m hortābor ut cū m āliquisbūs milītum prōfīciscātur.
15. Vereor nē quis vēniat.
16. Vereor nē quid eī accīdat.
17. Ut āliquōs vīrōrum mittant, eos hortēmur.
18. Cū m āliquisbūs princīpum illē vēnit.



LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. 41; 43, 1, a, b, 3, a: A. & S. 198, I., II., 1-11, first statement under each; 278: B. 180, the whole; 330, RULE LXXXI.: B. & M. 488-503; 1369; G. 15, IV., 3; 476; 485; 494; 500; 501: H. 308-311, the whole; 587, I., 2.

VOCABULARY.

aut, conj.

or; aut — aut, either — or.

et — et, conj.

both — and.

itāquē, conj.

accordingly, therefore.

nām , conj.	<i>for.</i>
ně , nonně , nům ,	interrogative particles (see NOTE 1).
něquě , conj.	<i>and not</i> ; něquě — něquě , <i>neither</i> — <i>nor</i> .
postquām , conj.	<i>after, as soon as.</i>
proptěreā , adv.	<i>for this reason.</i>
quamquām , conj.	<i>although.</i>
quōd , conj.	<i>because.</i>
sěd , conj.	<i>but.</i>

Translate, and parse² the conjunctions.

1. Impērātor ēť³ magnus ēť fortis est. 2. Něquě³ magni něquě fortes sunt consules. 3. Dux nōn magnus est sěd fortis. 4. Dumnōřigem vōcat ēiquě⁴ filiam suam ĩn mātřimōnium dat. 5. Itāquě rem suscēpit. 6. Hōřum⁵ omnium fortissĩmi sunt Belgae, proptěreā quōd ā cultu atquě hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissĩme⁶ absunt. 7. Helvėtii ĩter pěr prōvinciam fāciunt, proptěreā quōd āliud⁷ ĩter hābent nullum.⁷ 8. Is pāgus apel-lābātur Tigurĩnus⁸; nām omnis cĩvĩtas Helvėtia ĩn quattuor pāgos dĩvĩsa est. 9. Aut⁸ suis fĩnĩbus⁹ eos prōhĩbent, aut ipsĩ¹⁰ ĩn eōrum fĩnĩbus bellum gěrunt. 10. Miles, quamquām est fortis, nōn pugnābit. 11. Postquām Caesar pervēnit, ĩťā respondit. 12. Fortisně¹¹ est consul? 13. Nonně fortes sunt consules? 14. Nům fortis est consul? 15. Sĩ quĩd hābērem,¹² ĩd tĩbi dārem. 16. Nĩťĩtur ũť vincat.¹³ 17. Nonně consules dōmum vēnėrant? 18. Nům Tĩtus lėgātus circũm Gėnėvam hiemāvit?

Notes and Questions.

¹ **ně** is used to ask for information merely; **nonně**, when the answer *yes*, and **nům**, when the answer *no* is expected or implied; e. g. **bōnusně est puer?** *is the boy good?* **nonně bōnus est puer?** *is not the boy good?* i. e. the boy is good, is he not? **nům bōnus est puer?** *the boy is not good is he?*

² *To parse a conjunction* is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate; to which subdivision of its class it belongs; what it connects: e. g. in sentence 6, **quōd** is a *subordinate conjunction*, because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause; *causal*, because it introduces a reason; it connects the subordinate clause **proptěreā** — **absunt** with the principal clause **hōřum** — **Belgae**.

³ When a conjunction is doubled, as **et — et**, **aut — aut**, the first strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.

⁴ See 39 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 1.

⁶ See LN. XLII.

⁷ See 24.

⁸ Use the same word, **Tigurinus**, in translation.

⁹ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹⁰ What does **ipsi** emphasize?

¹¹ The interrogative particle **nō** is appended to the first word of its clause.

¹² **hābērem**, *I had*.

¹³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.



LESSON LXII.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following References will aid materially in translating and understanding the *Ablative Absolute*, *Subjunctive Mood*, and *Indirect Discourse*. A. & G. 45, 1-8, *coarse and fine print*: A. & S. 200-203, *coarse print*: B. 203, a-g; 288, a-f: B. & M. 1399-1401; 1404; 1405; 1407; 1408; 1411; 1413: G. 192; 193; 474, 1-4; 475; 505-508: H. 343-361, *coarse print*.

VOCABULARY.

cīvis, is, m. and f.

citizen.

in-fluō, fluēre, fluxi, fluxum,

flow into, empty.

inter-ficiō, ficere, feci, fectum,

kill.

poscō, poscere, pōposci, (no supine)

demand.

postquam, conj.

after, as soon as.

re-spondeō, spondere, spondi, sponsum,

reply, answer.

Translate and analyze¹ the following sentences.

1. Ejus rei pōpūlus Rōmānus est testis. 2. Divico re-spondit² ejus rei pōpūlum Rōmānum esse testem. 3. Hic pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium consulem interfēcērat ēt ejus exercitum sūb jūgum mīsērat. 4. Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsides pōposcit. 5. Flūmen³ est Arar, quōd in Rhodānum

influit. 6. Caesar ā lăcu Lemanno, qui în flūmen Rhōdănum influit, ād montem Jūram, qui fīnes Sēquănōrum āb Helvētiis divīdit, fossam perdūcit. 7. Quis⁴ es? Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Rēlinquēbātur ūna pēr Sēquānos via, quā prop̄ter angustias ire (*to go*) nōn pōtērant. 9. Ob eas causas eī mūnitiōni,⁵ quam fēcērat, Tītum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. 10. Vēni ūt tē vīdeam.

Write in Latin.

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke? 2. They will not send us home will they⁶? 3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived? 4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens. 5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea. 7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy. 8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good. 10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., EXAMPLES and NOTES.

² What is the object of *respondit*?

³ See 64.

⁴ See 64; what is the subject of *es*?

⁵ See 67.

⁶ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.



LESSON LXIII.

PARTICIPLES.

119. Definition. A. & G. 25, 1-3: A. & S. 148, 1, (1)-(4): B. 53, d: B. & M. 265, last clause: H. 575.

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. 72, 1: A. & S. 274, 2: B. 323, RULE LXXV.: B. & M. 1848: G. 278; 279: H. 572-574.

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. 72, 3: A. & S. 274, 3: B. 318: B. & M. 1850: G. 667: H. 578, I.-V.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sēsē omnes flentes Caesāri ād pēdes prōjēcērunt*, all
WEeping threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.
2. *Liscus multos dies mōrātus prōfectus est*, *Liscus* HAVING
·DELAYED many days set out; or, *Liscus*, AFTER HE HAD
DELAYED many days, set out.
3. *Caesar eōrum prēcibus adductus bellum suscēpit*, *Caesar*
HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties undertook the
war; or, *Caesar*, BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED by
their entreaties, undertook the war.
4. *Helvētīl ējus adventu commōtī lēgātos mittunt*, the *Helvētīi*
BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DIS-
TURBED) by his arrival send legates.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ad-dūcō</i> , <i>dūcērē</i> , <i>duxī</i> , <i>ductūm</i> ,	<i>lead to, influence.</i>
<i>flēō</i> , <i>flērē</i> , <i>flēvi</i> , <i>flētūm</i> ,	<i>weep.</i>
<i>in-dūcō</i> , <i>dūcērē</i> , <i>duxī</i> , <i>ductūm</i> ,	<i>lead into, induce.</i>
<i>pētō</i> , <i>pētērē</i> , <i>pētīvi</i> and <i>pētīi</i> , <i>pētītūm</i> ,	<i>beseech, ask, beg for.</i>
<i>prō-jiciō</i> , <i>jicērē</i> , <i>jēcī</i> , <i>jectūm</i> ,	<i>throw forward; sēs prōjicērē,</i> <i>to throw one's self down.</i>

Analyze, and parse the participles.

1. Omnes flentes¹ pācem pētīerunt. 2. Mūliēres flentes
vīros² implōrābant. 3. Belgae spectant in orientem sōlem.
4. Hostes in nostros vēnientes tēla conjīciēbant. 5. Milītes
sēsē Tītō³ ād pēdes prōjīcient. 6. Helvētīi his rēbus⁴ adducti⁵
cūm proximis civitātibus pācem confirmant. 7. Liscus ōrā-
tiōne Caesāris adductus lōcūtus est. 8. Hac ōrātiōne adducti
intēr sēs⁶ jusjūrandum dant. 9. Is⁷ regni cūpīdītate in-

ductus conjūrātiōnem nobilitātis fecit. 10. Sēquāni paucos dies mōrāti ād⁸ Gēnēvam prōfecti sunt. 11. Helvētii omnium rērum īnōpiā adducti lēgātos ād eum⁷ mīsērunt. 12. Caesar dē tertia vīgilia prōfectus ād⁹ Gēnēvam pervēnit.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of Cassius. 2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing enemy. 3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set out towards Rome. 4. Ariovistus, because he had been disturbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him.⁷ 5. The Germans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine. 6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates to him.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Parse a participle like an adjective (LN. VI., NOTE 1), giving in addition the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from the verb.

² viros, husbands.

³ See 39; translate as if it were a Genitive.

⁴ See 54.

⁵ Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.

⁶ See LN. LVII., NOTE 4. ⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ ād, towards, for.

⁹ ād, in the vicinity of.

¹⁰ What participles has a transitive verb? See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 5.



LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

122. A. & G. 54, 10, b, NOTE: A. & S. 257, REMARKS 1, 2: B. 264, RULE XLIX., a-c: B. & M. 964-966: G. 408; 409: H. 431, 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Marco Messālā ēt Marco Pisōne consūlībus**, *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls*; or better, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*.
2. **Hoc responso dāto discessit**,

a. <i>this reply having been given</i> b. <i>when this reply had been given</i> c. <i>having given this reply</i> d. <i>after giving this reply</i> e. <i>after he had given this reply</i>	}	he departed.
---	---	--------------

VOCABULARY.

con-vertō, vertēre, vertī, versūm,	turn about, change.
dis-cēdō, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm,	depart.
ibī, adv.	there.
rē-linquō, linquērē, liquī, lictūm,	leave behind, leave.
responsūm, ī, n.	answer, reply.
rē-vertor, vertī, versūs sūm,	return.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hāc ōrātiōne¹ hābītā² Caesar concīlium dīmīsīt. 2. Hāc ōrātiōne āb Divitiāco hābītā omnes auxiliūm pētiērunt. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne hābītā conversae sunt omnium mentes. 4. Convōcātis eōrum³ princīpībus Caesar grāvīter⁴ eos accūsāt. 5. Marco Messālā ēt Marco Pisōne consūlībus conjūrātiōnem nobīlītātis fēcīt. 6. Ibī Centrōnes⁵ lōcis supēriōrībus occūpātis ītinēre⁶ exercītum prōhībēre cōnantur. 7. Mūnītis castris duas ībī lēgiōnes rēliquit ēt partem auxiliōrum. 8. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi dōmum⁷ rēverti coepērunt (*began*). 9. Convōcātis eōrum princīpībus, quōrum⁸ magnam cōpiam īn castris hābēbat, grāvīter eos accūsāt. 10. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi, qui ād rīpas Rhēni vērērant, dōmum rēverti coepērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for⁹ peace. 2. After giving this reply all departed. 3. He came to Rome⁷ in the consulship of Titus and Cassius. 4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries. 5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The learner should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.

² *hābitā*, from *hābēo*, signifying *hold, deliver, make*.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁴ From what adjective is *grāviter* derived? What is the Stem of the adjective? What is the ending of the adverb? See LN. XLII.

⁵ See General Vocabulary.

⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁷ See 105.

⁸ What is the gender and number of *quōrū*? Why? (115) In what case is it? Why? (40)

⁹ *for* belongs to the *verb*; *peace* must be rendered by the *Accusative*.

**LESSON LXV.****IRREGULAR VERBS: FERÖ.**

123. Learn the entire conjugation of *fērō*. A. & G. 37, 4: A. & S. 179: B. 109, IV.: B. & M. 422-424: G. 186: H. 292.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis¹ auxilium fert. 2. Auxilium militibus² ā dūce fertūr. 3. Sī dux suis auxilium fērāt,³ laetentur.³ 4. Sī auxilium militibus ā dūce fērātūr,³ laetentur.³ 5. Ii⁴ suis auxilium ferrē nōn pōterant. 6. Fertē, milites, vestris¹ auxi-

lium. 7. Pöpulus Römānus diū injūrias tūlīt. 8. Injūriæ ā pöpulo Römāno diū lātae sunt. 9. Pöpulum Römānum hortātus est ūt⁵ diū injūrias ferrent.⁵ 10. Caesar dixīt pöpulum Römānum diū injūrias tūlissē. 11. Nūmērus eōrum,⁴ qui⁶ arma fērēbant, magnus fuit. 12. Nūmērus eōrum, ā quībus arma fērēbantūr, magnus fuit. 13. Nūmērus eōrum, qui arma ferrē pōtērant,⁷ magnus fuit. 14. Nūmērus eōrum, ā quībus arma ferrī pōtērant, parvus fuit. 15. Sī Gallis auxiliū ferrēs, Galli vincērent. 16. Sī quis⁸ Rōmānis auxiliū tūlissēt, vicissēt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The *Plural Masculine* of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where in translation some such word as *men, soldiers, friends*, may be supplied; the *Plural Neuter*, where we may supply *things, possessions*.

² See 39.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See 115.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁸ What is *quis* when immediately preceded by *si, nisi, ne, or num*? How is it declined? See LN. LX.

LESSON LXVI.

COMPOUNDS OF FERRO. — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

124. Ablative of Specification. A. & G. 54, 9: A. & S. 250: B. 261, RULE XLVI.: B. & M. 889: G. 398: H. 429. This answers the question *In what respect*?

EXAMPLES.

1. Virtūte praecēdunt, *they excel* IN COURAGE.
2. Nūmēro ād duōdēcīm, *about twelve* IN NUMBER.

VOCABULARY.

af-fērō,	af-ferrē,	at-tūlī,	al-lātūm,¹	<i>bring to, carry to, offer.</i>
con-fērō,	con-ferrē,	con-tūlī,	col-lātūm,	<i>bring together, carry together, collect.</i>
dif-fērō,	dif-ferrē,	dis-tūlī,	dī-lātūm,	<i>carry different ways ; differ.</i>
in-fērō,	in-ferrē,	in-tūlī,	il-lātūm,	<i>bring into, bring upon, make upon.</i>
rē-fērō,	rē-ferrē,	rē-tūlī,	rē-lātūm,	<i>bring back, carry back.</i>

Analyze and parse.

1. Hi omnes linguā,² institūtis,² lēgibus² intēr sē differunt.
 2. Oppida sua omnia nūmēro² ād duōdēcim³ incendunt.
 3. Eō⁴ circitēr⁵ hōmīnum nūmēro sēdēcim milia³ mīsīt.
 4. Helvētīi rēliquos Gallos virtūte praecedunt. 5. Helvētīi tōtī Galliae⁶ bellum infērebant. 6. Pars civitātis Helvētiaē insignem cālāmītatem pōpūlo Rōmāno intūlērat. 7. Helvētīi mīnus fācile fīnītīmīs bellum inferre pōtērant.⁷ 8. Obsides, arma, servi confēruntur. 9. Aedui dixērunt frūmentum conferri.⁸ 10. Caesar sarcīnas¹⁰ in ūnum lōcum conferri⁸ jussit.⁹ 11. Helvētīi cūm omnībūs suis carris sēcūti¹¹ impēdīmēta¹⁰ īn ūnum lōcum contūlērunt. 12. His responsīs¹² ād Caesārem rēlātīs ītērūm ād eum Caesar lēgātos cūm his mandātīs mittit.

Write in Latin.

1. All differed from each other in language and laws.
 2. They will burn their cities, about five in number. 3. The Romans will make war upon the Gauls.⁶ 4. I fear that the Romans will make¹⁸ war upon the Gauls. 5. Let¹⁴ us make war upon both the Germans and the Belgae. 6. The baggage will be collected into one place. 7. The Gauls, having followed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Accent the compounds of *fēro* correctly: *affēro*, *afferre*, *attūli*, *allātum*.

² See 124.

³ See 108.

⁴ *eo* is an adverb; see GEN. VY.

⁵ *circitēr* modifies the numeral.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ *pōtērant*, *could*.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ *jussit*, from *jūbeo*.

¹⁰ What is the difference between *sarcīnae* and *impēdimenta*? See General Vocabulary under *sarcīna* and *impēdimentum*.

¹¹ *sēcūti* from *sēquor*; where is it made?

¹² See 122.

¹³ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁴ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): **VOLO** AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of *vōlō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*. A. & G. 37: A. & S. 178: B. 109, VI.: B. & M. 417-419: G. 189: H. 293.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ā-vertō</i> , <i>vertērē</i> , <i>vertī</i> , <i>versūm</i> ,	<i>turn away.</i>
<i>mālō</i> , <i>mallē</i> , <i>mālui</i> ,	<i>be more willing.</i>
<i>nōlō</i> , <i>nollē</i> , <i>nōlui</i> ,	<i>be unwilling, not wish.</i>
<i>undē</i> , adv.	<i>from which place, whence.</i>
<i>vācō</i> , <i>ārē</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātūm</i> ,	<i>be unoccupied.</i>
<i>vōlō</i> , <i>vellē</i> , <i>vōlui</i> ,	<i>be willing, wish.</i>

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

1. Aeduos¹ flāgītāre² Tītus frūmentum¹ vult. 2. Helvētiis³ bellum inferrē vōlūmūs. 3. Galli fīnītīmīs bellum inferrē vōluerant. 4. Sī lēgātus pugnāre vēlīt, hostes fūgiant. 5. Nūm⁴ prōfīcisci dē tertia vīgīlia vultīs? 6. Dumnōrix quām⁵ plūrīmas cīvītātes hābēre vōlēbāt. 7. Consul impēdimenta⁶ īn ūnum lōcum conferri vult. 8. Sī vīs mē⁶ flēre.

9. Montem ā Cassio occūpāri vōluīt. 10. Mons, quem⁶ ā Lābiēno occūpāri vōluīt, āb hostībus tēnētur. 11. Dīcit vellē sēsē⁶ dē rēpublica⁷ cūm eo lōqui. 12. Caesār āb Helvētiis discēdere² nōlēbāt. 13. Nōluīt eum lōcum vācāre Liscus. 14. Dixit Caesārem āb Helvētiis discēdere² nollē. 15. Nōluīt eum lōcum, undē Helvētīi discessērant, vācāre. 16. Vir injūrias diū ferre nōlēt. 17. Sī lēgātus īter fācere nōlit, milītes laentur. 18. Vēreor nē⁸ dux suis auxiliū ferre nōlīt.⁸ 19. Iter āb Arāre Helvētīi āvertērant ā quībus discēdere nōlēbāt. 20. Pugnāre² Helvētīi mālunt quām fūgēre.² 21. Nonnē māvīs tuis⁹ auxiliū ferrē quām fūgere? 22. Omnes virtūte¹⁰ praecēdere māvult quām essē consul. 23. Gallis prōdesse quām bellum inferrē māluit. 24. Exercītui praeesse mālēt quām dōmī¹¹ mănere.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you⁴? 2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.³ 3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing⁸ to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his⁹ (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor¹⁰ than to be rich.

Notes.

¹ See 71.

² See A. & G. 57, 8, d: A. & S. 273, 4: B. 315, f, 3: B. & M. 1152; 1153: G. 424: H. 551, II.

³ See 67.

⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.

⁵ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

⁶ See 53.

⁷ See 110.

⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁹ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.

¹⁰ See 124.

¹¹ See 106.

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): EO AND FIO.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of **eō** and **fiō**. A. & G. 37, 6, 7: A. & S. 180; 182, REM. 3: B. 109, II., V.: B. & M. 413-415; 426-429: G. 185; 188, REMARK: H. 294; 295, 1, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dē Caesāris adventu certior factus est**, *he was informed of Caesar's arrival.*
2. **Caesar certior factus est hostes castra pōsisse**, *Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.*
3. **Caesārem certiorē faciunt hostes transire**, *they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.*

VOCABULARY.

certūs, ā, ūm,	<i>certain, sure; certior fieri, to be informed; lit., to be made more certain.</i>
eō, irē, ivi, itum,	<i>go.</i>
ex-eō, irē, ii, itum,	<i>go out, go forth, depart.</i>
fiō, fieri, factus sum,	<i>be made, become, occur.</i>
trans-eō, irē, ii, itum,	<i>go across, cross.</i>

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. **Dōmum**¹ eunt; **Rōman** ibo; **Bibracte**¹ eāmus.²
2. **Pēr angustias** ibāmus; **pēr Gallōrum fines** ivērunt.
3. **I**,³ mīles, dōmum; **itē**, pueri, dōmum.
4. **Hostes pēr nostram prōvinciam** ivērunt.
5. **Lēgātus Bibracte irē** contendit.
6. **Caesar cūm his quinque lēgiōnibus irē**⁴ contendit.
7. **In eam partem Galliae itūrōs**⁵ ešsē **Helvētios** dixit.
8. **Proptēr angustias irē**⁴ nōn pōtērant.
9. **Helvētii dē finibus suis cūm omnibus cōpiis** exibant.
10. **Nituntur** ūt ē finibus exeant.⁶
11. **Magnus nūmērus eōrum**⁷ dōmo⁸ exhibēt.
12. **Hic**

pāgus ūnus dōmo patrum nostrōrum mēmōriā⁹ exiērāt. 13. Flūmen Helvētii rātibus¹⁰ transībant. 14. Sī flūmen transeant,¹¹ eos vincāmus. 15. Sī hostes Rhōdānum transirē cōnentur, prōhibeāmus. 16. Boii¹² trans Rhēnum incōluērāt ēt īn agrum Norīcum¹² transiērāt. 17. Undīquē ūno tempōre īn hostes impētus fiēbāt. 18. His rēbus¹³ fiēbāt. 19. Dē ējus⁷ adventu Helvētii certiōres facti sunt. 20. Caesar eōdem die āb explōrātōribus certior factūs suas cōpias praemittēre vōlēbat. 21. Duo vīri consūles¹⁴ facti ērunt. 22. Pēr explōrātōres Caesar certior factūs est Sēquānos pēr prōvinciam īter fēcissē.¹⁵

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What question do dōmum and Bibracte answer? See 105, a.
² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7. ³ In what is the Imperative used? (47)
⁴ See 69. ⁵ Why is itūros in the Acc. Plural?
⁶ How is the Subjunctive with ūt to be translated after verbs of *striving* and *endeavoring*?
⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
⁸ What question does dōmo answer?
⁹ See 111. ¹⁰ See 54.
¹¹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 1. ¹² See GEN. VY.
¹³ See 79. ¹⁴ See 64.
¹⁵ See Ex. 2.



LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. 38, 1, a-c, NOTE: A. & S. 183, 1-3: B. 111, b, REM. 1, 2: B. & M. 434-437: G. 190, 5: H. 297, I.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. 39, a-d: A. & S. 184, 1: B. 112; 113: B. & M. 451; 452; 454: G. 199: H. 298; 299.

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. 57, 8, a, b: A. & S. 269, coarse print: B. 315, a, b: B. & M. 1147: G. 423: H. 549.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Perfācile est impērio pōtīri (129)**, *it is very easy TO GET POSSESSION OF the government.*
2. **Mīhi ire (129) licet**, *it is permitted me TO GO ; or, I may go.*
3. **Mīhi ire licuit**, *it was permitted me TO GO ; or, I might have gone.*
4. **Rōgat ūt id sibi fācēre liceat**, *he asks that it be permitted him TO DO this ; better, he asks permission to do this.*
5. **Rōgābat ūt id sibi fācēre liceret**, *he was asking that it be permitted him TO DO this ; or, permission to do this.*
6. **Me ire (129) oportet**, *it is necessary that I should go ; or, I ought to go.*
7. **Me ire oportuit**, *it was necessary that I should go ; or, I ought to have gone.*
8. **Dicit me ire oportere**, *he says it is necessary that I should go ; or, he says that I ought to go.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mēmīnērunt,¹ ōdērunt. 2. Mēmīnēram Tītum, vīdēram Cassium. 3. Memento vērīre²; dīcit sē mēmīnisse. 4. Liscus dixit Dumnōrīgē ōdisse Caesārem ēt Rōmānos. 5. Et tē ēt illum³ ōdērāmus. 6. Nēquē⁴ mē nēquē eum ōdit. 7. Divitiācus multis cū lacrimis Caesārem obsēcrāre⁵ coepit. 8. Suēvi, qui⁶ ād rīpas Rhēni vērērānt, dōmum rēverti coepērunt. 9. Omnes mīlites Rhōdānum transīre coepērunt. 10. Frūmentum⁷ conferri⁸ oportet. 11. Nos⁷ Rhēnum transīre oportuit.⁹ 12. Dīcit illum ād sē vērīre oportere.¹⁰ 13. Caesārem dē ējus adventu certīorem¹¹ fīeri oportuit. 14. Rōgāvērunt ūt sibi¹² liceret concīlium tōtīus Galliae convōcāre. 15. Rōgāvit ūt sibi ire liceret. 16. Tībi eo die ire licebit. 17. Perfācile est tōtīus Galliae impērio pōtīri. 18. Tībi Caesārem certīorem fācēre dē meo adventu licet.¹³ 19. Tībi dōmum ire licuit.¹⁴

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home. 2. Are you going home? 3. You ought to go home. 4. We ought to have gone home. 5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva. 6. You could have gone to Bibracte; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte. 7. You are not going to Rome are you? 8. Are you not going to Rome? 9. Who will go home with me? 10. He says that corn ought to be collected. 11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home. 12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is a Defective Verb? What is an Impersonal Verb?

² See 52.

³ *illum*, *that one*; see LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.

⁵ See 69.

⁶ Where is *qui* made and why?

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 129.

⁹ See EXAMPLE 7.

¹⁰ In this sentence *illum* is the subject of *vēnīre*; *illum* — *vēnīre*, the subject of *oportēre*; *illum* — *oportēre*, the object of *dicit*.

¹¹ See LN. LXVIII., EX. 1.

¹² How does this *sibi* differ from the *sibi* in sentence 15?

¹³ What is the subject of *liet*?

¹⁴ See EXAMPLE 3.



LESSON LXX.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

130. Periphrastic Conjugations. A. & G. 25, 4; 40, a-c: A. & S. 162, 14, 15: B. 94, a, b: B. & M. 328; 329: G. 149; 150; 239; 243: H. 231; 232.

131. Dative of Agent. A. & G. 51, 4, a: A. & S. 225, III.: B. 248, RULE XXXVI.: B. & M. 847: G. 353: H. 388.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Doctūrus sūm**, *I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.*
2. **Doctūrus ērat (fuit)**, *he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.*
3. **Audiendi sūmus**, *we must be heard; we ought to be heard.*
4. **Tībi (181) audiendi sūmus**, *you must hear us; you ought to hear us.*
5. **Agri consūli vastandi ērant (fuērunt)**, *the consul had to lay waste the fields.*
6. **Vexillum prōpōnendum ērat**, *the flag had to be displayed.*
7. **Oppīdum oppugnandum ērit**, *the town will have to be stormed.*
8. **Oppīdum vōbis mūniendum ērit**, *you will have to fortify the town.*

Translate¹ and parse.

1. Obsīdes tībi dātūrus sum.² 2. Caesar mīhi obsīdes dātūrus fuit. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānos victūrus fuit. 4. Hostes ād rīpas Rhēni ītūri sunt. 5. Nūnciat hostes ād rīpas Rhēni ītūros essē. 6. Frūmentum³ Aeduos³ flāgītūrus lēgātus ērat. 7. Dōmum ītūri sūmus. 8. Patriae⁴ prōfūtūri estis. 9. Nōbis⁵ bellum gērendum ērit. 10. Duo consūles creandi sunt. 11. In hostes vēnientes tēla nōbis conjīcienda ērant. 12. Oppīdum lēgāto expugnandum ērit. 13. Pēr Alpes mīlītibus īter faciendum ērit. 14. Frūmentum Aeduis dandum est.⁶ 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesāri īn Galliam mātūrandum est.⁷ 17. Caesar mātūrandum sībi essē existīmāvit. 18. Dē ējus adventu Caesar certior⁸ faciendus est. 19. Caesāri omnia ūno tempōre ērant āgenda: vexillum prōpōnendum,⁹ quod¹⁰ ērat insigne, quūm ād arma concurrī¹³ ōportēret¹¹; signum tūba dandum⁹; āb ōpēre rēvōcandī¹² mīlītes; qui¹⁶ paulo longius¹⁴ aggēris pētendi causā¹⁵ prōcessērant arcessendī¹²; ācies instruenda,⁹ mīlītes cōhortandī.¹²

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter. 2. I was intending to go to Bibracte. 3. The lieutenant was to storm the town. 4. My brother is about to go to the city. 5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors. 6. The boys must hasten home. 7. We must carry on war with our neighbors. 8. You will have to fortify the town. 9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers. 10. The consul had to give the signal. 11. The city will have to be fortified. 12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Imitate the Examples in translation.
- ² Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.
- ³ See 71. ⁴ See 67.
- ⁵ See 131 and Example 8; what is the literal translation?
- ⁶ What are the different translations of this sentence? See 39 and 131.
- ⁷ *mātūrandum est* has no *personal* subject; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.
- ⁸ See LN. LXVIII., EXAMPLE 1. ⁹ Supply *ērat*.
- ¹⁰ Why is *quod* in the Neuter Singular?
- ¹¹ See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7; what is the subject of *oportēret*? Translate by the Indicative.
- ¹² Supply *ērant*. ¹³ *concurri*, to rush.
- ¹⁴ *paulo longius*. a little too far.
- ¹⁵ *aggēris* — *causā*, for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound.
- ¹⁶ The antecedent of *qui* is *ii*, which is the subject of *arcessendi* (*ērant*).



LESSON LXXI.

USE OF THE DATIVE.

132. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. A. & G. 51, 2, a, b : A. & S. 223, REM. 2; 225, I.: B. 241, RULE XXIX.; 244, RULE XXXII.: B. & M. 824; 831: G. 345: H. 385 and 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cīvītāti (132) persuāsit ūt exīrent,¹ *he persuaded THE STATE to go forth.*
2. Novīs rēbus studēbat, *he was eager FOR A REVOLUTION; lit., for new things.*
3. Allobrōgībus impērāvit, *he gave orders TO THE ALLOBROGES.*
4. Plācuit ei (132) ut mīttēret,¹ *it pleased HIM to send.*
5. Sī Allobrōgībus satisfaciāt, *if he should give satisfaction TO THE ALLOBROGES.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hoc² facilius eis persuāsit, quōd³ undīquē loci nātūrā⁴ Helvētii continentur. 2. Is, Marco Messāla ēt Marco Pisōne consūlībus,⁵ regni cūpīdītate inductus⁶ conjūrātiōnem nobīlītātis fecit ēt cīvītāti²⁰ persuāsit, ūt dē finībus suis cūm omnībus cōpiis exīrent.¹ 3. Persuādēt Raurācis ēt Tulingis, finītīmīs,⁷ ūti, eōdem ūsī⁸ consīlio,⁹ oppīdis⁵ suis vīcisquē exustis,¹⁰ ūnā cūm iis prōficiantur.¹ 4. Orgētōrix cūpīdītate regni adductus⁶ nōvis rēbus¹¹ studēbat. 5. Liscus dixit Dumnorīgem fāvēre Helvētiis sēd ōdisse¹² Caesārem ēt Rōmānos. 6. Caesar Allobrōgībus impērāvit ūt iis frūmenti cōpiam fācērent.¹ 7. Quamobrem plācuit¹³ ei ūt ād Ariovistum lēgātos mīttēret. 8. Huic lēgiōne Caesar indulsērat praecepūē. 9. Sī¹⁴ Aeduis dē¹⁵ injūriis, quas ipsis¹⁶ sociisquē eōrum¹⁷ intūlērint,¹⁸ itēm sī Allobrōgībus sātisfāciant, cūm iis pācem fāciat.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go¹ forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,² because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade² (our) neighbors to adopt⁸ the same plan, burn up¹⁰ their houses and set out¹ in company with us.

5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends. 6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for¹⁵ the wrongs which he has brought upon them¹⁶ and their¹⁷ allies. 7. We can¹⁹ not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. ² See 79.
³ *quōd* is a *conjunction*; what kind of a clause does it introduce?
⁴ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4 and 79. ⁵ See 122.
⁶ See LN. LXIII., EXAMPLES. ⁷ See 25.
⁸ *usi* from *utor*, to *adopt*; lit., *having adopted, made use of*.
⁹ See 104.
¹⁰ *oppidis — exustis*, to *burn up their towns, etc.*; lit., *their towns, etc. having been burned up.* (122)
¹¹ See EX. 2.
¹² What kind of a verb is *ōdisse*? (127)
¹³ *plācuit* is an impersonal verb in this sentence; what is its subject?
¹⁴ Sc. *satisfāciant*. ¹⁵ *de*, *for*.
¹⁶ See 67. ¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
¹⁸ *intūlērint* from *infēro*; render it by the Perfect Indicative.
¹⁹ See LN. XXVIII., EX. 1.
²⁰ *civitatī*, *state*, is used here for *civibus*, *citizens*; hence the dependent clause has *exirent* instead of *exiret*.



LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. 54, 5: A. & S. 256, 2: B. 261, RULE XLVI., c: B. & M. 895: G. 399: H. 417.

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. 57, 3, 4: A. & S. 260, REM. 6: B. 309, RULE LXVIII.: B. & M. 1193; 1197: G. 247; 249; 253; 256: H. 487; 488, I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Nōn amplius milibus (133) passuum octōdēcim ābērat,*
he was not more THAN EIGHTEEN MILES distant.
2. *Nihil virtūte (133) mēlius est, nothing is better THAN VIRTUE.*
3. *Cīves mei sint (134) beāti, MAY my fellow-citizens BE happy.*
4. *Amēmus (134) pātriam, LET US LOVE our country.*
5. *Vēniat (134), LET HIM COME.*
6. *Nē hōdie prōficiāmur (134), LET US not SET OUT to-day.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte mēlius est? 2. Scīmus sōlem mājōrem
essē terrā. 3. Amīcītia, quā¹ nīhil mēlius hābēmus, nōbis² ā
dis³ immortalibus dāta est. 4. Haec⁴ sunt dulciōra melle.
5. Milītes fortiōres sunt impērātōre. 6. Caesar ab oppīdo
nōn amplius milibus passuum duōbus castra pōsuit. 7. Ab urbe
nōn amplius milibus passuum quinquē castra pōnēmus. 8. Ipse
āb hostium castris nōn longius mille⁵ ēt quingentis passibus
ābērat. 9. Quōd ā Bibracte, oppīdo Aeduōrum longē maxīmo
ēt cōpiōsissīmo, nōn amplius milibus passuum octōdēcim
ābērat, rēi frūmentāriae prospīciendum⁶ existīmāvit:⁷ Iter⁸ āb
Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. 10. Milītes vēniant.
11. Sītis⁹ beāti. 12. Hos latrōnes interficiāmus. 13. Cae-
sārem dē ējus adventu certiōrem faciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte
dē quarta vīgīlia nē prōficiāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fiat
dē meo consīlio. 16. Iter cēlērīus pēr Galliam faciāmus.
17. Cīvītātī¹⁰ persuādēmus ūt exeant.¹¹ 18. Nōvis rēbus nē
stūdeāmus. 19. Hostibus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduis
dē injūriis, quas eōrum sōciis¹² intūlīmus, sātisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar.
2. Nothing is better than friendship.
3. The lieutenant is braver than the general.
4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city.

5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch.
 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these men.
 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May it please¹³ you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 133.² See 39.³ See 20.⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.⁵ Is *mille* in this sentence an adjective or substantive? See 108.⁶ Sc. *essē*. See 130.⁷ *rēi* — *existimāvit*, he thought that he ought to look out for supplies.⁸ Introduce the translation of this clause with *accordingly*.⁹ See EXAMPLE 3.¹⁰ See 132.¹¹ See LN. LXXI., NOTE 20.¹² See 67.¹³ See LN. LXXI., Example 4.

LESSON LXXIII.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES.

135. Sequence of Tenses. A. & G. 58, 9, 10, RULE: A. & S. 258, A, B, I., 1, 2: B. 61; 311, RULE LXX.: B. & M. 1163; 1164: G. 216; 510: H. 198, 2; 480; 481, I., II.

136. Subjunctive of Purpose. A. & G. 64, 1, a; 70, 3, a: A. & S. 262; 264, 5: B. 295, RULE LVIII.; 299, RULE LXI.: B. & M. 1205; 1207: G. 543–546; 632: H. 489, I., II. This answers such questions as *For what purpose?* *With what design?* *With what aim?* *To what end?* *Why?* *What?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnit	} ut vīdeat,	he comes	} TO SEE, IN ORDER
2. Vēniet		he will come	
3. Vēnit		he has come	
4. Vēnērit		he will have come	
			TO SEE, THAT HE MAY SEE.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 5. Vēniēbat | } ut vidēret, | he was coming | } TO SEE, IN ORDER | |
| 6. Vēnit | | he came | | } TO SEE, THAT HE |
| 7. Vēnērat | | he had come | | |
8. Ut consēqui posset pontem fēcit, he made a bridge THAT HE MIGHT BE ABLE to pursue.
9. Postulāvit nē Aeduis bellum inferret, he demanded THAT HE SHOULD NOT MAKE war UPON the Aedui.
10. Equitātum qui sustinēret impētum misit, he sent cavalry TO WITHSTAND the attack.
11. Nē offendēret vērēbātur, he was fearing THAT he should offend.
12. Ut socii vēnirent vērēbātur, he was fearing THAT the allies would NOT come.

Analyze and parse.

1. Allobrogibus impērauit, ut iis frumenti cōpiam facerent.
 2. Caesar Dumnorigem mōnet, ut in rēliquum tempus¹ suspiciōnes vitet. 3. Nām, nē ejus supplicio² Divitiāci ānimum offendēret, vērēbātur. 4. Dumnorigi persuāsit ut idēm³ cōnārētur. 5. Cōpias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit ēquitātumquē, qui sustinēret hostium impētum, misit. 6. Lēgātos ad eum mittunt qui dicant agros consūli⁴ vastandos esse.⁵
 7. Postulāvit nē aut Aeduis⁶ aut eōrum sociis⁶ bellum inferret. 8. Nonnulli pūdore adducti,⁷ ut tīmōris suspiciōnem vitarent, rēmānēbant. 9. Caesar omnium ex conspectu rēmōtis ēquis,⁸ ut spem fugae tollēret, cōhortātus⁹ suos¹⁰ proelium commisit. 10. Caesar ad Ariovistum lēgātos misit, qui ab eo postulārent, uti āliquem¹¹ locum mēdium utriusque¹² collōquio¹³ dicēret. 11. Castella commūnit, quo¹⁴ facilius, si sē invito¹⁵ transire cōnārentur, prōhibere possit.

Write in Latin.¹⁶

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn. 2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers. 3. We shall advise

him¹⁷ to avoid suspicions in the future.¹ 4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future. 7. We shall send cavalry to withstand the attack of the Gauls. 8. Caesar, after removing his horse⁸ out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely. 9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that¹⁴ we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

¹ in *reliquum tempus*, in the future ; lit., into the remaining time.

² See 79.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13 ; where would *idem* be made ?

⁴ See 131.

⁵ See 130 and 62.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 3.

⁸ See 122 and EXAMPLES.

⁹ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 2.

¹⁰ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.

¹¹ How declined ? See 116, a.

¹² *médium utriusque*, midway between both ; *uterque* is declined like *uter*. (24)

¹³ See 39.

¹⁴ *quo* is preferred to *ut* when its clause contains a comparative.

¹⁵ *se invito*, against his will ; see 122 ; lit., he unwilling.

¹⁶ In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.

¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

LESSON LXXIV.

USE OF THE DATIVE (*continued*).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. 51, 3 : A. & S. 226 : B. 243, RULE XXXI. : B. & M. 821 : G. 349 : H. 387.

138. Two Datives. A. & G. 51, 5 : A. & S. 227, REM. 3 : B. 246, RULE XXXIV. : B. & M. 848 : G. 350 : H. 390, I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Est mīhi (137) dōmi pāter, I have a father at home; lit., a father is to me at home.*
2. *Sex vīro (137) filii fuērunt, A MAN had six sons.*
3. *Haec mīhi (138) sunt cūrae, these (things) are A CARE TO ME; lit., these (things) are FOR A CARE TO ME.*
4. *Tertiam āclem nostris subsidio mīsit, he sent the third line AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).*
5. *Nōvissimis praesidio ērant, they were A PROTECTION TO THE HINDMOST.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mīhi est āmicus; tibi sunt plūrimi āmicī. 2. Magni pēdes sunt meo fratri sēd cāput parvum. 3. Erit consūli magnus exercitus. 4. Impērātōri fuērunt milītes multi ēt¹ fortes. 5. Virtus est vīro hōnōri. 6. Dixit haec sibi essē cūrae. 7. Quinquē cōhortes castris praesidio rēlīquit. 8. Lēgātō² impērāvit ūt quinquē cōhortes castris praesidio rēlinquēret.³ 9. Magno ūsui nostris fuit. 10. Nām ēquītātui,⁴ quem⁵ auxilio Caesāri Aedui mīsērant, Dumnōrix praecerat. 11. Gallis magno ād pugnam⁶ erat⁷ impēdimento, quōd nōn sātīs commōdē pugnāre pōtērant. 12. Boii ēt Tulingi, qui hōmīnum milibus⁸ circitēr quīndēcīm agmen hostium claudēbant ēt nōvissimis⁹ praesidio ērant, ex ītīnere¹⁰ nostros circumvērē.¹¹ 13. His rēbus¹² cognītis Caesar Gallōrum anīmos verbis¹³ confirmāvit pollicītusquē est sibi eam rem cūrae fūtūram.¹⁴ 14. Ariovistus dixit āmicītiām pōpūli Rōmāni sibi ornāmento ēt praesidio nōn dētrimento essē¹⁵ ōportēre.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in

battle that we could¹⁷ not fight with sufficient ease. 6. He will order the lieutenant² to send¹⁸ soldiers as a relief to our men. 7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief to our men. 8. The consul ought¹⁶ to send soldiers as a relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.² See 132.³ Why is the Subjunctive used? (136) Why the Imperfect Tense? (135) What question does *ut* — *relinqueret* answer? (136)⁴ See 67.⁵ *quem*; why is the Masculine Singular used? Why the Accusative?⁶ *ad pugnam*, in battle.⁷ The subject of *erat* is the substantive clause *quod* — *pöterant*.⁸ Is *milibus* used as a noun or as an adjective? (108); see also 54.⁹ *növissimis*, to the hindmost; lit., to the newest.¹⁰ *ex itinere*, on the march.¹¹ What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural?¹² See 122.¹³ See 54.¹⁴ Sc. *esset*.¹⁵ See 129.¹⁶ See 128 and Ex. 8.¹⁷ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 2.¹⁸ See 136.

LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. Subjunctive of Result. A. & G. 65, 1, b, 2; 70, 4, a: A. & S. 262, REM. 3; 264, 1, 6, 7: B. 296, RULE LIX.; 297, RULE LX.; 301, RULE LXII.: B. & M. 1218-1220: G. 553-558; 551, 1, 2: H. 489; 495, 2; 498; 500.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Tantus timor exercitum occupavit ut omnium mentes perturbaret*, such fear seized the army THAT IT DISTURBED the minds of all.

2. *Dixit nōn sē tām barbārum essē ūt nōn scīret, he said he was not so uncivilized AS not TO KNOW.*
3. *Fiēbat ūt mīnus lātē vāgārentur, it happened THAT THEY ROAMED ABOUT less extensively.*
4. *Rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quīn tēla conjicērent, they could not be prevented FROM HURLING weapons.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Milītes nūmēro¹ tām multi ērant, ūt agmīni² nōvissīmo magno praesīdio² essent.³ 2. His rēbus⁴ fiēbat⁵ ūt ēt mīnus lātē vāgārentur ēt mīnus faciē fīnītīmīs bellum inferre possent. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sē tām barbārum essē, ūt nōn scīret bello⁶ Allobrogum proxīmo Aeduos Rōmānis auxīlium nōn tūlissee. 4. Tantus sūbito tīmor omnem exercītum occūpāvit, ūt nōn mēdiocrītēr omnium mentes⁷ amīmosquē perturbāret. 5. Mons autēm altissīmus impendēbat, ūt⁸ faciē perpauci prōhibēre possent. 6. Divīco respondit: Itā⁹ Helvētios ā mājōrībūs suis instītūtōs essē,¹⁰ ūti obsīdes accīpēre, nōn dāre, consuērīnt.¹¹ 7. Ita dies¹² circītēr quīndēcīm īter fēcērunt, ūti intēr nōvissīmum hostium agmen ēt nostrum prīmum¹³ sex mīlia passuum interessent. 8. Ipse autēm Ariovistus tantos sībī¹⁴ spīrītus, tantam arrōgantiam sumpsērat, ūt fērendus¹⁵ nōn vīdērētur. 9. Germāni rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quīn īn nostros tēla conjicērent.

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled. 2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee. 3. We are so many in number¹ that we can easily keep their¹⁷ army from the march.¹⁶ 4. For these reasons⁴ it happened that they easily kept our army from the march.¹⁶ 5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors. 6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van.¹³ 7. This man assumes¹⁹ such lofty airs

that he does not seem endurable.¹⁵ 8. The lieutenant assumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable.¹⁵ 9. The Romans could not be prevented from making¹⁸ war upon their neighbors.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 124.² See 138.³ Why the *Imperfect*? (135)⁴ *his rébus*, for these reasons; see 79.⁵ What is the subject of *fiēbat*?⁶ See 111.⁷ How do *mens* and *ánimus* differ in signification? See GEN. VY.⁸ *ut*, so that.⁹ *ita* modifies *institutos* *essē*.¹⁰ *institutos* *essē* is object of *rēpondit*. (52)¹¹ See A. & G. 30, 6, a: A. & S. 162, 7: B. 95, d: B. & M. 315: G. 151, 1: H. 234.¹² See 93.¹³ *primum*, sc. *agmen*; render *van*.¹⁴ See 39.¹⁵ *fērendus*, *endurable*; lit. (*one*) *to be endured*.¹⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.¹⁸ See EXAMPLE 4.¹⁹ *to assume*, *sibi* *sumēre*.

LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

140. Genitive with Adjectives. A. & G. 50, 3, b: A. & S. 213: B. 234, RULE XXIII.: B. & M. 765: G. 373: H. 399.

141. Genitive in Predicate. A. & G. 50, 1, c: A. & S. 211, REM. 8, (1)–(3): B. 230, REM. 1: B. & M. 780: G. 365: H. 401.

142. Genitive with certain Verbs. A. & G. 50, 4, a: A. & S. 216: B. 235, RULE XXIV.: B. & M. 788: G. 375: H. 406, II.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Qui rēi* (140) *militāris pēritissimus hābēbātur*, *who was considered very skilful in military science*.

2. **Bellandi (140) cūpīdi, desirous of** CARRYING ON war.
3. **Jūdicium impērātōris (141) est, the decision is** THE GENERAL'S ; OR, *belongs TO THE GENERAL.*
4. **Gallia est pōpūli (141) Rōmāni, Gaul belongs TO THE Roman PEOPLE.**
5. **Rēmīniscātur pristīnae virtūtis (142) Helvētiōrum, let him** recollect THE former VALOR of the *Helvetii.*
6. **Vētēris contūmēliae (142) oblivisci vult, he is willing to** forget THE old INSULT.

Analyze and parse.

1. Lēgātus belli pēritus¹ hābētur. 2. Lēgātus nītitur ūt belli pēritus fiat.² 3. Nītēbātur ūt rēi mīlītāris pēritissīmus fiēret.³ 4. Publius Considius, qui rēi mīlītāris pēritissīmus hābēbātur ēt⁵ in exercītu Luci Sullae ēt postea in Marci Crassi⁴ fuērat, cūm explōrātōribus praemittitur. 5. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tām impērītum esse rērum, ūt nōn scīret⁶ Aeduos auxīlio⁷ pōpūli Rōmāni nōn ūsos essē.⁸ 6. Mīlītes hortābor, ūt glōriae sempēr memōres sint. 7. Nos mōnuit ūt virtūtis sempēr mēmōres essēmus. 8. Qua dē causa⁹ hōmīnes bellandi¹⁰ cūpīdi magno dōlōre affīciēbantur. 9. Dicit ipsum esse Dumnōrīgēm cūpīdum nōvārum rērum. 10. Dicunt dē summa belli¹¹ jūdīcium impērātōris essē¹² sē existīmāvisse.¹² 11. Nēquē jūdīcat Galliam pōtius essē Ariovisti quām pōpūli Rōmāni. 12. Mīlītum est fortītēr pugnāre ;¹³ impērātōris est impērāre. 13. Divīco Caesārem hortātur ūt rēmīniscātur ēt¹⁴ vētēris incommōdi pōpūli Rōmāni et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 14. Caesar rēcentium injūriarum oblivisci nōn vult.¹⁵ 15. Omnis contūmēliae obliviscāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. I am not considered very skilful in war.¹⁶ 2. I shall strive to become² skilful in war. 3. This lieutenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was

considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers.

4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.¹⁰

5. The decision concerning the general management¹¹ of affairs belongs¹⁷ to the consul. 6. This house is Caesar's. 7. We

ought to forget insults.¹⁸ 8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 64.

² See 126 and 136.

³ Why Imperfect? (135)

⁴ in *Marci Crassi*, sc. *exercitu*; translate, *in that of Marcus Crassus*.

⁵ *et* connects *hābēbatur* and *fuērat*. ⁶ See 139 and Example 2.

⁷ See 104.

⁸ *ūsos essē* depends upon *sciret*.

⁹ *qua de causa*, for this reason.

¹⁰ *bellandi* is a Gerund; parse it like a noun.

¹¹ *de summa belli*, concerning the general management of the war.

¹² *essē* depends upon *existimāvisse*; *existimāvisse* upon *dicunt*.

¹³ See 129.

¹⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.

¹⁵ See 125.

¹⁶ See 140.

¹⁷ See Ex. 3.

¹⁸ See 142.



LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. 59, 1, a, b, 2, a - c: A. & S. 261, 1, 2: B. 305, a, 1 - 3; 306, RULE LXVI.: B. & M. 1259 - 1268: G. 590; 591; 596 - 599: H. 502; 507 - 510.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Si vincit, laetātur*, if he is conquering, he is rejoicing.

2. *Si vincet, laetābitur*, if he conquers (shall conquer), he will rejoice.

3. *Si vicērit, laetābitur*, if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will rejoice.

4. *Sī vincat, laetētur, if he should conquer, he would rejoice.*
5. *Sī vincēret, laetārētur, if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.*
6. *Sī vīcisset, laetātus esset, if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Sī pugnat, vincit.* 2. *Sī pugnābit, vincet.* 3. *Sī pugnāvērīt, vincet.* 4. *Sī pugnet, vincat.* 5. *Sī pugnāret, vincēret.* 6. *Sī pugnāvīssset, vīcisset.* 7. *Sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus¹ sātīsfācient, cum iis pācem fāciam.* 8. *Sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus sātīsfāciant, cūm iis pācem fāciam.* 9. *Caesar dīcit sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībus sātīsfāciant, sēsē cūm iis pācem esse factūrum.²* 10. *Sī quid³ vultis,¹⁰ rēvertīmīni.⁴* 11. *Sī pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm Helvētīis faciet, īn eam partem ībunt¹¹ Helvētīi ūbī eos esse vōluēris.⁵* 12. *Sīn bello⁶ persēqui⁷ persēvērābis,⁸ rēmīniscēre⁴ ēt vētēris incommōdi⁹ pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae virtūtis Helvētīōrum.* 13. *Sī vētēris contūmēliae oblivisci vellem,¹⁰ nūm¹² ētiām rēcentium īnjūriarum mēmōriam dēpōnēre⁷ possem?* 14. *Sī id fīet, prōvinciae¹³ pēriculōsum ērit.* 15. *Caesar dīcit sī nēmō¹⁴ sēquātur, sē cūm sōla dēcīma lēgiōne ītūrum essē.¹¹*

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui,¹ he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything,³ ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish⁵ us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing⁸ us with war,⁶ let them recall to mind¹⁵ our former valor.⁹ 9. If we were willing to forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 132. ² *essē factūrum = factūrum essē.*
³ See 116 and Ex. 6. ⁴ See 47.
⁵ What does the Future Perfect Tense denote? (42)
⁶ See 54. ⁷ See 69.
⁸ *persēqui persēvērō, I persist in pursuing.*
⁹ See 142. ¹⁰ See 125.
¹¹ See 126.
¹² What answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.
¹³ See 86.
¹⁴ The Genitive and Ablative of *nēmo* are rare: these cases are supplied by *nullus* and *nullo* (from *nullus*, 24).
¹⁵ See 134.



LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

144. Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference.

A. & G. 54, 6, *e*: A. & S. 256, REM. 16: B. 262, RULE XLVII.:
 B. & M. 929: G. 400: H. 418.

144, a. Ablative of Quality. A. & G. 54, 7, *a*: A. & S. 211,
 REM. 6: B. 263, RULE XLVIII.: B. & M. 888: G. 402: H. 428.
 This is called sometimes *the Ablative of Characteristic*, sometimes *the Descriptive Ablative*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Altērum iter multo (144) expēditius ērat, the other route was MUCH more passable.*
2. *Mātūrius paulo (144) dōmum contendit, he hastens home A LITTLE sooner.*
3. *Ipsūm Dumnōrigem, summā audāciā (144, a), Dumnorix himself, (a man) OF THE GREATEST BOLDNESS.*
4. *Summa hūmānitāte (144, a) ādōlescens, a youth OF THE HIGHEST CULTURE.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multo grāvius quēritūr.¹ 2. Multo māior ālacritas exercītui² injecta est. 3. Altērū īter pār prōvinciam nostram ērat, multo fācilius atquē expēditius, proptēreā quōd intēr fines Helvētiōrum ēt Allobrōgum, qui nūpēr pācāti ērant, Rhōdānus fluit. 4. Caesar ūnā aestāte³ duōbus maxīmis bellis⁴ confectis mātūrius paulo, quām tempus anni postūlābat, īn hiberna īn⁵ Sēquānos exercītum dēduxit. 5. Post ējus mortē nīhilo mīnus Helvētii id, quōd constītuērāt,⁶ fācere cōnantūr, ūt ē finībus suis exeant.⁷ 6. Rēliqum spātium mons contīnet magnā altītūdīne, itā, ūt rādīces⁸ montis ex utrāque parte⁹ rīpae¹⁰ flūmīnis contingant.¹¹ 7. Galli ingenti magnītūdīne corpōrum Germānos,¹² incrēdībīli virtūti atquē exercitiōne īn armis essē¹³ praedīcābant. 8. Commōdissī-mum vīsum est¹⁴ Cāium Vālērīum Procillum, summā virtūte ēt hūmānitāte ādōlescentem, ād eum mittēre. 9. Rēpērit ipsum esse Dumnōrīgē, summā audāciā, magnā āpūd plēbem proptēr libērālītātem grātiā, cūpīdum¹⁵ rērū¹⁶ nōvārū.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely. 2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers. 3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among⁵ the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded. 5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do). 6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor. 7. We have seen mountains of great height. 8. It seemed¹⁴ most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

Notes.

- ¹ See 103. ² See 67.
³ See 111. ⁴ See 122.
⁵ in, among. ⁶ constituērant, sc. facere.
⁷ it — exeat is an appositive to id ; for the mood, see 139 ; translate,
to go forth.
⁸ See 34. ⁹ ex utrāque parte, on each side.
¹⁰ See 32. ¹¹ See 139.
¹² See 53. ¹³ See 52.
¹⁴ What is the subject of visum est ? (129)
¹⁵ See 64. ¹⁶ See 140.



LESSON LXXIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. 61, 2 : A. & S. 263, 2 : B. 292, e, RULE LVI. ;
 303, d, RULE LXIV. : B. & M. 1281 - 1284 : G. 605 - 609 : H.
 514 ; 515, I. - III.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quūm pugnātum sit, *although they fought ; lit., it was fought.*
2. Licet victoriā glōriētur, *although he glories in victory.*
3. Quamvis cārēbat nōmīne, *although he was without the name.*
4. Etsi vidēbat, tāmēn nōn pūtābat, *although he saw, yet he did not think.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quūm fortītēr pugnent, tāmēn nōn vincent. 2. Quūm Sēquāni Rōmānis¹ sātisfēcērint, tāmēn lēgātus pācem cūm iis nōn facit. 3. Quūm ea² itā sint, tāmēn, sī obsīdes āb iis sībi dentur,³ cūm iis pācem faciat.³ 4. Nām hoc tōto proelio,⁴ quūm āb hōra septīma ād vespērum pugnātum sit,⁵ āversum hostem vīdēre nēmo pōtuit. 5. Licet⁶ me hortētur, nōn pugnābo. 6. Licet mīles vulnērātus sit, tāmēn laetātur. 7. Lī-

cet Helvētīi sua victōria⁷ glōrientur, tāmēn ūter faciēnt nōn pēr nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignitāte⁸ rēgia, quamvīs cārēbat nōmīne.⁹ 9. Quamvīs sint sūb āqua, sūb āqua mālēdīcēre tentant. 10. Caesar, etsī prōpē exacta jām aestas ērat, tāmēn eō¹⁰ exercitum adduxit. 11. Nām etsī sīnē ullō pēricūlo lēgiōnis¹¹ dēlectae cūm ēquītātu proelium fōre¹² vīdēbat, tāmēn committendum¹³ nōn pūtābat. 12. Itā dies circitēr quīndēcīm ūter fēcērunt, ūtī intēr nōvissīmum hostium agmen ēt nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnis¹⁴ aut sēnis milībūs¹⁵ passuum intēresset.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer.
2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with them.
3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they fought from the fifth hour till sunset.
4. We cannot see the mountain, although it is of great height.⁸
5. The lieutenant did not lead his army into winter-quarfers, although the summer was almost gone.
6. He thinks that he ought to begin¹³ battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to the legions.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 132.² See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.³ See LN. LXXVII., EX. 4. What is the force of this conditional clause? (143)⁴ See 111.⁵ See EX. 1.⁶ *Ucēt* is properly an Impersonal Verb (128), Present Tense, with *ut* (*that*) omitted; hence it is followed only by the *Present* and *Perfect Subjunctive*. (135) What is the literal translation?⁷ See 79.⁸ See 144, a.⁹ See EX. 3.¹⁰ *eō*, *thither*.¹¹ A. & G. 50, 3: A. & S. 211, REM. 2, *last part*: B. 233, RULE XXII.: B. & M. 746: G. 361, 2: H. 396, II.¹² *fōre* = *fūtūrum essē*. (62)¹³ *committendum*, sc. *essē*; see 130.¹⁴ *quīnis*, etc., *than five*, etc. *each day*.¹⁵ See 133.¹⁶ See 139.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

146. Ablative of Price. A. & G. 54, 8: A. & S. 252: B. 258, RULE XLIII., c: B. & M. 884: G. 404: H. 416. This answers such questions as *For how much?* *At what price?*

147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. 55, 2, b: A. & S. 236: B. 262, RULE XLVII.: B. & M. 958: G. 335, REMARK 1: H. 378, 2. This answers the question, *How far?*

148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. 54, 3, a: A. & S. 244: B. 261, RULE XLVI., a: B. & M. 919: G. 373, REMARKS 1-4: H. 419, IV.

EXAMPLES.

1. Dŏmum duŏbus tālentis (146) ēmit, he bought a house FOR TWO TALENTS.
2. Oppīdum parvo prētio (146) vendīdit, he sold the town AT A SMALL PRICE.
3. Millibus (147) passuum quattuor ēt vīgintī absunt, they are TWENTY-FOUR MILES distant.
4. Dignus est mājōribus (148), he is worthy OF (his) ANCESTORS.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic¹ mercēde puēros ēt puellas dŏcet. 2. Vīgintī tālentis ūnam ōrātiōnem Isocrātes vēndīdit. 3. Vendīdit hic auro patriam. 4. Victōria nōbis² multo sanguīne stētīt.³ 5. Vēreor nē victōria iis multo sanguīne stet.⁴ 6. Quām Rōmāni vicērīnt,⁵ tāmēn victōria iis multo sanguīne stētīt. 7. Septīmo die āb explŏrātōrībūs certior factus⁶ est Ariovisti cōpias⁷ ā nostris⁸ millibus passuum quattuor ēt vīgintī ābesse.⁹ 8. Hic lŏcus aequo fērē spātio āb castris Ariovisti ēt Caesāris āberat. 9. Lēgiōnem Caesar, quām ēquis¹⁰ dēvexērat, passibus dūcentis āb eo tūmūlo constituit. 10. Itēm ēquītes

Ariovisti p̄ri intervallo constītērunt.¹¹ 11. Eōdem die castra prēmōvit ēt mīlīb^{us} passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sūb monte consēdit. 12. Hī pueri patrīb^{us} indigni sunt. 13. Hic imp̄rātor immortalītāte dignus est. 14. Līcēt¹² hī mīlītes fortissīmī sint, tāmēn mājōrīb^{us} indigni sunt. 15. Puērūm hortēmur ūt mājōrīb^{us} dignus sit.¹³ 16. Nulla vox est āb iis audīta p̄pūli Rōmāni mājestāte ēt sūp̄eriōrīb^{us} victōriis indigna.

Write in Latin.

1. This man¹ will teach for wages. 2. I shall sell my house at a small price. 3. He is by no means rich, although he sells⁵ houses at a large price. 4. I fear that I shall not sell⁴ my house at a large price. 5. We are about fifteen miles from the city. 6. We shall station the third legion three hundred paces from the hill. 7. He will station his cavalry at nearly an equal distance from the same place. 8. We shall move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva. 9. I fear that these girls are not worthy of their mother. 10. Let us urge the soldiers to be¹³ worthy of their country.

Notes.

¹ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

² See 39.

³ See GEN. VY. under *stō*.

⁴ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 5.

⁵ See 145.

⁶ See LN. LXVIII., Ex. 2.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ Sc. *cōpiis*.

⁹ *ābessō* depends upon the idea of saying contained in *ab* — *factus est*, *he was informed by scouts that*, etc., i. e. who said that, etc.

¹⁰ *ēquis*, on horseback; see 54.

¹¹ See *consistō*, GEN. VY.

¹² See LN. LXXIX., NOTE 6.

¹³ See 136.

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. 62, 2, *e*; 63, 1-4: A. & S. 263, 5; 264, 8; 266, 3: B. 302, RULE LXIII.: B. & M. 1250; 1251; 1255: G. 538-541; 587; 636: H. 518, I., II.; 519, 1; 520, I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quū impētus sustinēre nōn possent, altēri sē in montem rēcēpērunt, *since they could not withstand the attacks, one party withdrew upon the mountain.*
2. Caesar injūriam faciēbat qui vectigālīa dētēriōra faciēret, *Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues decrease.*
3. Aedui questi sunt quōd Harūdes fines eōrum pōpūlārentur, *the Aedui complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.*
4. Quōd ā Bibracte ābērat, rei frūmentāriæ prospiciendum existimāvit, *because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought that he must look out for supplies.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfācile est, quū virtūte¹ omnībus praestētis, tōtīus Galliae impērio² pōtīri.³ 2. Orgētōrix dixit perfācile essē, quū virtūte omnībus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae impērio potiri. 3. Quū magna ex parte⁴ eōrum prēcībus⁵ adductus bellum suscēpērit, quērītur. 4. Caesāri quū id nunciātum esset, mātūrat āb urbe prōfīcisci. 5. Diūtius⁶ quū nostrōrum⁷ impētus sustinēre nōn possent, altēri sē, ūt coepērant,⁸ in montem rēcēpērunt, altēri ād impēdimenta ēt carros suos sē contūlērunt. 6. In fines Lingōnum die quarto pervēnērunt quū propter vulnera mīlītum nostri trīdium mōrāti eos sēqui nōn pōtuisent. 7. Ariovistus dixit magnam Caesārem

injūriam facere qui suo adventu vectīgālia dētēriōra⁹ faceret. 8. Grāvītēr eos accūsāt quōd āb iis nōn sublēvētur. 9. Multo¹⁰ etiām grāvius quōd sit destitūtus quērītur. 10. Prop̄ter frīgōra, quōd Gallia sūb septemtriōnībus pōsita est,¹¹ frūmenta īn agris mātūra nōn ērant. 11. Eo autēm frūmento,² quōd¹² flūmīne Arāre nāvībus¹³ subvēxerat, proptēreā mīnus ūti¹⁴ pōtērat, quōd īter āb Arāre Helvētii āvertērant, ā quībus discēdere nōlēbat.¹⁵ 12. Quōd ā Bibracte, oppīdo Aeduōrum longē maxīmo ēt copiōsissīmo, nōn amplius milībus¹⁶ passuum octōdēcim āberat, rei frūmentāriae prospiciendum¹⁷ existīmauit: īter āb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte¹⁸ īre contendit.

Write in Latin.

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy to get possession of their government. 2. Since they fight more bravely than the Gauls¹⁹ they will easily conquer. 3. We are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks. 4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy, one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself to the baggage. 5. He complained because (as he said) he could not use the corn. 6. He complains because (as he says) he has sold his house at a small price.²⁰ 7. Because Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great. 8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset,²¹ because we are not more than twenty miles distant.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 124.

² See 104.

³ See 129.

⁴ *magna ex parte, in great part.*

⁵ See 79.

⁶ *Diūtius* modifies *sustinere*.

⁷ The *Possessive Pronouns*, like the *Demonstrative*, are often used substantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

⁸ What kind of a verb is *coep̄rant*? (127)

⁹ See EXAMPLE 2.

¹⁰ See 144.

- 11 Of what does **quōd** — **pōsita est** express the cause ?
 12 See 115 and 34. 13 See 54.
 14 See 69. 15 See 125.
 16 See 133. 17 See EXAMPLE 4.
 18 See 105. 19 *Than the Gauls, quam Galli.*
 20 See 146. 21 See 111.



LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. 62, 2, *b-d*: A. & S. 263, 3-5, REM. 2: B. 292, *d*, 1-3, RULE LVI.; 304, 1-3, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1237; 1238; 1241; 1244: G. 570; 571; 574; 576; 579; 580; 581: H. 518, II., 1; 522, I., II.; 523, I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quūm lēgātī mittērentur, Ariovistus postūlāvit,** *when ambassadors were sent, Ariovistus demanded.*
2. **Priusquā quidquā cōnārētur Divitiācum vōcat,**¹ *before he attempted anything he summoned Divitiacus.*
3. **Dūm haec gēruntur Caesāri nunciātum est,** *while these things were taking place it was reported to Caesar.*
4. **Nōn expectandum sibi stāluit dūm pervēnīrent,** *he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.*

Analyze and parse.

1. **Diū quūm esset pugnātum, impēdimentis castrisque² nostri³ pōtīti sunt.** 2. **Quūm trīdūi viam⁴ prōcessisset, nunciātum est⁵ ei Ariovistum cū suis omnībus cōpiis contendēre.** 3. **Hic pāgus ūnus, quūm dōmo⁶ exisset patrum nostrōrum mēmōriā,⁷ Lucium Cassium consūlem interfēcērat ēt ējus exercitum sūb jūgum mīsērat.** 4. **Quūm²⁰ hostium ācies ā sīnis-tro cornu⁸ pulsā⁹ atquē īn fūgam conversa esset, ā dextro**

cornu vēhementēr multītūdīne suōrum⁸ nostram āciem prēmēbant. 5. Itāquē priusquam quidquām cōnārētur Divitiācum ād sē vōcārī jūbet.¹ 6. Postquām īd ānīmum advertit cōpiās suas Caesar īn proxīmum collem subdūcit. 7. Eō postquām Caesar pervēnit obsīdes, arna, servos¹⁰ pōpōscit. 8. Dūm haec īn collōquio gēruntur,¹¹ Caesāri nunciātum est⁵ ēquītes Ariovisti lāpīdes tēlāquē¹² īn nostros conjicēre. 9. Tāmēn, ūt spātium intercēdēre posset,¹³ dūm mīlītes, quos impērāvērāt, convēnīrent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ād dēlibērandum¹⁴ sumptūrum.¹⁵ 10. Quībus¹⁶ rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum¹⁷ sibi stātuit, dūm, omnībus fortūnis¹⁸ sociōrum consumptis, īn Santōnos Helvētīi pervēnīrent.

Write in Latin.

1. When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded corn of them.¹⁹ 2. When they had proceeded a three days' march,⁴ they pitched (their) camp. 3. Before they attempted to set out they summoned a council. 4. After the general arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons, and¹⁰ horses. 5. Although we had routed the enemy's line on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon us. 6. While the troops are assembling we are waiting. 7. We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble. 8. Influenced by these¹⁶ affairs, we decided that we ought¹⁷ not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 58, 2, d: A. & S. 145, I., 3: B. 58: B. & M. 1082: G. 220: H. 467, III.

² See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

³ See LN. LXXXI., NOTE 7.

⁴ See 109.

⁵ What is the subject of *nunciātum est*? (129)

⁶ See 107.

⁷ See 111.

⁸ a sinistro cornu, on the left wing. ⁹ pulsa, sc. esset.

¹⁰ When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it : e. g. either *obsides, arma, servos* ; or *obsides et arma et servos* ; NOT *obsides, arma et servos*.

¹¹ A. & G. 58, 2, c: A. & S. 259, (1.), (c.): G. 220, REMARK: H. 467, 4.

¹² An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached : *tēlūque*.

¹³ See 136.

¹⁴ *ad deliberandum, for deliberating.*

¹⁵ *sumptūrum, sc. essē.*

¹⁶ The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative : *quae res, THESE affairs.*

¹⁷ *expectandum, sc. essē.* See 130 and 131

¹⁸ See 122.

¹⁹ See 71 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

²⁰ See 145.



LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. 67, 2 and REMARK: A. & S. 265 and NOTE 2: B. 294, a, RULE LVII.: B. & M. 1182: G. 454; 469: H. 524; 525.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quid sui consilii¹ sit ostendit, he shows what his plan is.*
2. *Causa quae esset quaesivit, he asked what the cause was.*
3. *Arlovisto mirum visum est quid in Gallia Caesari negotii¹ esset, Ariovistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Qualis esset natura montis, qui² cognoscere³ misit.*
2. *Dicit intelligere sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit.*
3. *Ex quo iudicari potest,⁴ quantum habeat in se boni¹ constantia.*
4. *Dumnorigi custodes ponit,⁵ ut, quae agat, quibuscum⁶ loquatur, scire possit.*
5. *Ariovistus dixit sibi mirum videri,⁷ quid in sua Gallia, quam bello⁸ vicisset,⁹ aut Caesari¹⁰*

aut omnino pōpulo Rōmāno¹⁰ nēgōti¹ esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod pēr fines Aeduōrum ēt Sēquānōrum īn Rhodānum influit incredībīli lēnītate, itā ūt oculis, īn utram partem¹¹ fluat, iūdicāri nōn possit. 7. Postero die castra ex eo lōco mōvent. Idēm¹² facit Caesar, ēquītātumquē omnem, ād nūmērū quat-tuor milium, quem ex omni prōvincia ēt Aeduis atquē cōrum sōciis coactum hābēbat,¹³ praemittit, qui vīdeant,³ quas īn partes hostes īter faciant. 8. Caesar vēhēmētēr eos incūsāvit quod, aut quām īn partem aut quo consilio¹⁴ dūcērentur,¹⁵ sibi quaerendum¹⁶ aut cōgītandum pūtārent.¹⁷ 9. Caesar dixit dē quarta vīgilia sē castra mōtūrum, ūt quām primum intellī-gere posset, utrūm āpūd eos pūdor atquē officium, ān tīmor vālēret. 10. Quūm ex captīvis quaerēret Caesar, quām ōb rem Ariovistus proelio⁸ nōn dēcrtāret, hanc rēpēriēbat cau-sam.

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed. 2. We shall send (men) to ascertain³ in what direction the river flows. 3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows. 4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled. 5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think¹⁷ they ought to ask¹⁶ in what direction they are to be led. 6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly. 7. We shall place guards over him,⁵ that we may know with⁶ whom he speaks. 8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *quid sui consili*, what his plan; lit., what of his plan. See A. & G. 50, 2: A. & S. 212: B. 227, RULE XVII.: B. & M. 771: G. 366; 371: H. 396, III.

² *qui*, sc. *vīros* as antecedent.³ See 136 and Ex. 10.⁴ What is the subject of *pōtest*?⁵ *Dumnōrigi* — *pōnit*, *he places guards over* (lit. for) *Dumnorix*.⁶ See LN. LIX., NOTE 1.⁷ *sibi* — *vidēri*, *he wondered*; lit., *it seemed to him wonderful*; for *sibi*, see 39.⁸ *bello*, in war; see 54.⁹ *vicisset*, translate by the Indicative. •¹⁰ See 137.¹¹ in *utram partem*, in which direction.¹² How does *idem* differ in meaning from *idem*?¹³ *coactum habēbat*, *he had collected*.¹⁴ See 79.¹⁵ *dūcērentur*, *they were to be led*.¹⁶ *quaerendum*, sc. *essē*: see 130.¹⁷ See 149 and Ex. 3.

LESSON LXXXIV.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. 67, REMARK, and 1: A. & S. 266, NOTE, and 2: B. 316; 317, RULE LXXIV.: B. & M. 1295; 1296: G. 651–653: H. 528; 530, I., II.; 531.

EXAMPLE.

Oratio Recta, Direct Discourse.

Ob eam
rem ex civitate profūgti et
Rōmam vēnti, quōd nēquē
jūrejūrando nēquē obsidibus
tēnēbar.

I fled from
the state and came to Rome for
this reason, because *I* was re-
strained neither by an oath nor
by hostages.

Oratio Obliqua, Indirect Discourse.

Lōcūtus est Divitiācus: ōb eam
rem sē ex civitate profūgtisse et
Rōmam vēnisse, quōd nēquē
jūrejūrando nēquē obsidibus
tēnērētur.

Divitiacus said: *he* fled from
the state and came to Rome for
this reason, because *he* was re-
strained neither by an oath nor
by hostages.

Analyze and parse.

1. Divico respondit: Itā Helvētios ā mājōribus suis instītūtos esse, ūtī obsīdes accīpēre,¹ nōn dāre consuērīnt²; ējus rei pōpulum Rōmānum essē testem. 2. Lēgātī dīxērunt sēsē hābēre quasdam res, quas ex commūnī consensu āb eo pētēre vellent. 3. Lōcūtus est prō his Divitiācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnes essē duas: hārum³ altērius⁴ princīpātum tēnēre Aeduos, altērius Arvernos. 4. Dixit hōrum⁵ prīmo circītēr milia quīndēcīm Rhēnum transisse: posteaquā agros ēt cultum ēt cōpias⁶ Gallōrum hōmīnes fēri āc barbāri ādāmasent, trāductos⁷ plūres:¹¹ nunc essē īn Gallia ād centūm ēt vīgīntī mīlium nūmērūm. 5. Dixit cūm his Aeduos eōrumquē clientēs sēmēl atquē ītērūm armīs⁸ contendisse; magnam cālāmītātē pulsos⁹ accēpisse, omnem nōbīlītātē, omnem sēnātūm, omnem ēquītātūm⁹ āmīsisse. 6. Anīmadvertit Caesar ūnos ex omnībūs Sēquānos nīhīl eārum rērūm¹⁰ fācēre, quas cētēri fācērent, sēd trīstes cāpīte¹⁰ dēmisso terram intūērī.

Notes.

¹ See 69.² See 139 and LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.³ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.⁴ altērius modifies factiōnis understood.⁵ cōpias, wealth.⁷ See 54.⁹ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 10.¹¹ plus is declined as follows:⁶ trāductos, sc. essē.⁸ See pello.¹⁰ See 122.

	N.		M. and F.	N.
SING.	Nom.	plūs,	PLUR.	plūres,
	Gen.	plūris,		plūrium,
	Dat.	—		plūrībus,
	Acc.	plūs,		plūres,
	Abl.	—		plūrībus,

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.

Si
pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm
Helvētiis **fāciet**, in eam partem
ibunt atque ibi **erunt** Helvē-
tiī, ūbi eos **tu** constitu-
eris atque esse vōlū**eris**; sīn
bello persēqui persēvērā**bis**, rē-
mīnisc**ere** ēt vētēris incom-
mōdi pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae
virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

If the Roman people
shall make peace with the
Helvetii, the Helvetii **will** go
into that part and stay where
you shall have determined and
wished that they should be;
but if **you shall** persist in
continuing war, recollect the
old misfortune of the Roman
people and former valor of the
Helvetii.

Indirect Discourse.

Is itā cūm Cēsāre ēgit: Si
pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cūm
Helvētiis fāc**ret**, in eam partem
itūros atque ibi **fūtūros** Helvē-
tios, ūbi eos **Caesar** constitu-
isset atque esse vōlū**isset**; sīn
bello persēqui persēvērā**ret**, rē-
mīnisc**eretur** ēt vētēris incom-
mōdi pōpūli Rōmāni ēt pristīnae
virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

*He treated with Caesar as fol-
lows:* If the Roman people
should make peace with the
Helvetii, the Helvetii **would** go
into that part and stay where
Caesar should have determined
and wished that they should be;
but if **he should** persist in con-
tinuing war, **let him** recollect
the old misfortune of the Roman
people and former valor of the
Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa¹ praedicavit: Transisse Rhēnum sēsē
nōn suā sponte,² sēd rōgātum³ ēt arcessitum³ ā Gallis; nōn
sīnē magna spe magnīsqūē praemiis dōmum prōpinquosqūē
rēliquisse: sēdes hābēre⁴ in Gallia āb ipsis⁵ concessas,⁶ obsīdes
ipsōrum⁶ vōluntāte² dātos; stipendium cāpēre⁴ jūre⁷ belli,

quod⁸ victōres victis⁹ imponēre consuērint.¹⁰ 2. His Caesar itā respondit : Eo¹¹ sibi mīnūs dūbītātīōnis¹² dāri, quōd eas res, quas lēgātī Helvētīi commēmōrassent,¹⁰ mēmōriā²¹ tēnēret, atquē eo¹³ grāvius ferre, quo¹³ mīnūs mērito⁷ pōpuli Rōmāni accēdissent : qui si¹⁴ alicūjus injūriæ¹⁵ sibi¹⁶ conscius fuisset, nōn fuisse diffīcile cāvēre¹⁷ ; sed eo¹¹ dēceptum,¹⁸ quod nēque commissum¹⁹ a se intelligēret, quāre tīmēret, nēque sīne causa tīmendum²⁰ pūtāret.

Notes.

¹ A. & G. 47, 4, b : A. & S. 205, REM. 7, (2) : B. 269 : B. & M. 658 : G. 195, REMARK 2 : H. 441.

² See 79.

³ See 121 and Exs. 3 and 4.

⁴ hābere, capēre, sc. sē.

⁵ ipsis, sc. Gallia.

⁶ concessas, from concēdo ; ipsōrum, their own.

⁷ The *Ablative of Cause* often designates that *in accordance with* which anything is done : jūre, *in accordance with the law*.

⁸ See 115.

⁹ A. & G. 47, 3 : A. & S. 205, REM. 7 : B. 269 : B. & M. 658 : G. 195, REMARK 1 : H. 441, 1 ; this rule includes Participles and Pronouns : for the *case of victis*, see 67.

¹⁰ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

¹¹ eo, for this reason.

¹² See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

¹³ See GEN. VY. under eo.

¹⁴ qui si, if he.

¹⁵ See 140.

¹⁶ See 86 ; translate, on his own part.

¹⁷ See 129.

¹⁸ dēceptum, sc. essē sē.

¹⁹ commissum, sc. essē āliquid.

²⁰ tīmendum, sc. sibi essē, and see 130.

²¹ See 54.

LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar replies : The Romans have been so trained up by their fathers that they do not give¹ hostages. 2. He in-

forms Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many² (things) : (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because³ we had been invited³ by the Sequani ; we did not set out from home⁴ without great rewards ; we have among the Helvētīi large possessions, granted to us with their own⁵ consent ;⁶ we levied tribute on the conquered⁷ in accordance with the law⁸ of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind ; that you had been deceived for this reason,⁹ that¹⁰ you had neither done anything for which¹¹ you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear¹² without a reason.

Notes.

¹ See 139.² See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.³ See 121 and Ex. 3.⁴ See 107.⁵ *their own, ipsōrum.*⁶ See 79.⁷ See 67 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.⁸ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.⁹ *for this reason, eo.*¹⁰ *that, quōd.*¹¹ *for which, quārē.*¹² See 130 and 131.

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. The Gerund. A. & G. 73, 1 : A. & S. 275, I. : B. 324 : B. & M. 1319 ; 1321 : G. 426 ; 427 : H. 559 ; 560.

EXAMPLES.

- I. Hostibus pugnandi pōtestātem fēcit, *he gave the enemy an opportunity* FOR FIGHTING.

2. *Bellandi cūpīdi, fond OF CARRYING ON WAR.*
3. *Diem ad dēlibērandum sūmet, he will take a day for DELIBERATING.*
4. *Rēpērlēbat in quaerendo, he found on INQUIRING.*
5. *Stūdium pugnandi, a desire FOR FIGHTING.*

Analyze and parse.¹

1. Qua dē causa hōmīnes bellandi² cūpīdi magno dōlōre³ affīciēbantur. 2. His rēbus adducti ēt auctōritāte Orgētōrigis permōti, constītuērunt ea, quae ad prōfīciscendum pertīnērent,⁴ comparāre. 3. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum.⁵ 4. Rēpērlēbat in quaerendo Caesar īnitium ējus fūgae factum⁵ ā Dumnōrige atquē ējus ēquītibus. 5. Caesar Divitiācum consōlātus rōgat, finem ōrandi fāciat.⁶ 6. Ariovistus, quū nēquē ādītum nēquē causam postūlandi justam hābēret,⁷ libērālītate⁸ sēnātus ea praemia consēcūtus est. 7. Caesar lōquendi finem fācit sēquē ad suos⁹ rēcīpit, suisquē impērāvīt nē quod¹⁰ omnīno tēlum in hostes rējicērent. 8. Multo¹¹ māior ālacritas stūdiumquē pugnandi mājus exercītui injectum est. 9. Proxīmo die Caesar āciem instruxit hostībūsquē¹² pugnandi pōtestātem fēcīt.¹³ 10. Itā nostri⁹ acritēr in hostes signo¹⁴ dāto impētum fēcērunt, ut spātium pīla in hostes conjīciendi nōn dārētur.¹⁵

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war. 2. We shall take ten days for deliberating. 3. We shall ask them to make⁶ an end of entreating. 4. A much greater desire for carrying on war was infused into all of us.¹⁶ 5. They gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them. 6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace and friendship with us. 7. You will find on inquiring (that) we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns. 8. They

said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep the enemy from their cities. 9. We made an end of speaking and betook ourselves to our (friends). 10. Although we had no just cause for asking, we obtained many things¹⁷ by reason of your generosity.⁸

Notes.

¹ Parse the Gerunds like nouns.

² See 140.

³ A. & G. 54, 7, b: A. & S. 247, 2: B. 259, RULE XLIV.: B. & M. 373: G. 401: H. 414, 3.

⁴ A. & G. 65, 2: A. & S. 264, 1, (a.): B. 301: B. & M. 1218: G. 633: H. 500, 2, second part.

⁵ *essē* is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.

⁶ See 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3; *ut*, as here, is sometimes omitted.

⁷ See 145.

⁸ See 79.

⁹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

¹⁰ See 116, second part.

¹¹ See 144.

¹² See 39.

¹³ See EXAMPLE 1.

¹⁴ See 122 and Ex. 2, b.

¹⁵ See 139.

¹⁶ *all of us, omnibus nobis*; see 67.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.



LESSON LXXXVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. *The Gerundive.* A. & G. 73, 2: A. & S. 275, II.: B. 325, RULE LXXVI.: B. & M. 1322: G. 428: H. 562.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ad minuendam grātiā, for DIMINISHING popularity.*
2. *Ad eas res conficiendas Orgētōrix dēligitur, Orgetorix is chosen to EXECUTE these plans.*
3. *Spem regni obtinendi, the hope OF OBTAINING the sovereignty.*
4. *Dātā facultāte itinēris faciendi, if an opportunity for marching should be granted.*

Analyze, and parse.

1. Quibus opibus¹ ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam² grātiā,³ sed paenē ad pernīciem suam utērētur.⁴ 2. Ipse in cītēriōrem Galliam ad conventus āgendos prōfectus est. 3. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi sātis esse duxerunt. 4. In Gallia ab his, qui ad condūcendos hōmīnes facultātes habebant, regna occūpābantur. 5. Ea, quae ad effēmīnandos ānimos pertinent, important. 6. Dēcīma lēgio sē esse ad bellum gērendum pārātissimam confirmāvit. 7. Ariovistus dixit omnes Galliae civitātes ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse. 8. Frumentum omne, praeterquā quod sēcum portātūri ērant,⁵ combūrunt, ut dōmū⁶ rēditionis spe⁷ sublātā⁸ pārātiōres ad omnia pēricūla sūbeunda essent. 9. Liscus dīcit sī quid accidat⁹ Rōmānis, summam in spem¹⁰ pēr Helvētios regni obtinendi Dumnōrīgem vēnīre. 10. Hac ōrātiōne hābitā¹¹ summa ālacritas et cūpiditas belli gērendi innāta est. 11. Nēquē hōmīnes inīmīco ānimo,¹² datā facultate pēr prōvinciam itīnēris faciendī, tempērāturos¹³ ab injūria et mālēficio existimāvit. 12. Hoc proelio facto rēliquis cōpias Helvētiōrum ut consēqui posset,¹⁴ pontem in Arāre faciendum cūrat¹⁵ atquē itā excercitum trādūcit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men. 2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city. 3. We entertain¹⁰ the highest hope of establishing friendship with all. 4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls if anything happens⁹ to us. 5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans. 6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix. 7. Let us not import¹⁶ those things which tend to enervate the mind. 8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace

with all men. 9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come to attack him. 10. We shall burn up our villages, that we may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

¹ See 104.

² Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like adjectives.

³ *grātiā*, sc. *suam*.

⁴ *utēretur*, translate by the Indicative.

⁵ See LN. LXX., Ex. 2.

⁶ See 105; *dōmum* limits the idea of *motion* in the verbal noun *rēditionis*.

⁷ See 122.

⁸ From *tollo*.

⁹ *accīdat*, translate by the Indicative; why is it in the Subjunctive? (151)

¹⁰ *in spem vēnio*, I entertain the hope.

¹¹ See LN. LXIV., NOTE 2.

¹² See 144, a.

¹³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

¹⁴ See 136.

¹⁵ *pontem* — *curat*, he attends to building a bridge over the *Saône*; lit., he cares for a bridge to be built, etc. How is *Saône* pronounced?

¹⁶ See 134.

▷.



LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155. *The Supine*. A. & G. 74, 1-2: A. & S. 276, I.-III.: B. 326, RULES LXXVII. and LXXVIII.: B. & M. 1360; 1365: G. 435 - 437: H. 567 - 570.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Lēgātos mittunt rōgātūm auxīlium*, they send legates TO ASK FOR aid.
2. *Perfācile factū*, very easy TO DO.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aedui, quū sē suāquē¹ āb iis dēfendēre nōn possent,² lēgātōs ād Caesārem mittunt rōgātūm auxiliū. 2. Bello Helvētiōrū confecto tōtīus fērē Galliae lēgāti, princīpes³ cīvītātūm, ād Caesārem grātulātūm convēnērunt. 3. Lēgāti āb Aeduis ēt ā Trēvīris vēniēbant; Aedui⁴ questūm quōd Harūdes, qui nūpēr īn Galliam transportāti essent,⁵ fīnes eōrūm pōpūlārentur²; sēsē nē obsīdībūs quīdēm dātis pācem Ariovisti rēdīmēre pōtuisse. 4. Divitiācus dixit ōb eam rem sē ex cīvītātē prōfūgisē ēt Rōmam⁶ ād sēnātūm vēnisē auxiliū postulātūm, quōd sōlus nēquē jūrejūrando nēquē obsīdībūs tēnērētur. 5. Liscus dicit Dumnōrīgē ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem hābēre, sōrōrem ex matre⁷ ēt prōpinquas suas nuptūm īn ālias cīvītātēs collōcasse. 6. Hostis⁸ est uxor invitā⁹ quae ād vīrūm nuptūm dātur. 7. Perfācīle factū essē illis prōbat cōnāta perficēre, proptēreā quōd ipse suae cīvītātis impēriū obtentūrus esset.¹⁰

Write in Latin.

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops. 2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid. 3. Since we cannot² defend ourselves and our possessions¹¹ from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva⁶ to ask for aid. 4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them). 5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him). 6. Ambassadors came from all the states; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed² the Rhine to attack¹² their towns; (saying that) not even after a pledge¹³ had been given were they able to establish peace. 7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do. 8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 4, 2, c: A. & S. 15, 2: B. 24, Exc. 3: B. & M. 21: G. 14, REMARK 1: H. 25, 3, 1).

² See 149.

³ See 25.

⁴ Aedui, sc. vēnībant.

⁵ See A. & G. 66, 2: A. & S. 266: B. 310, RULE LXIX.: B. & M. 1291: G. 666: H. 527.

⁶ See 105.

⁷ sōrōrem ex matre, *his half-sister*. ⁸ See 64.

⁹ invita, *against her will*; it modifies quae.

¹⁰ See LN. LXX. and 149.

¹¹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

¹² See 155.

¹³ See 122.



LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. 84, 1-3, a-e: A. & S. 326, (1.)-(6.): B. 374, a-c: B. & M. 1524-1537: G. APPENDIX, page 371: H. 707-710.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. 15, 1-4: A. & S. 328: B. 373: B. & M. 1538-1542: H. 719; 720.

VOCABULARY.

Jānuārius, ā, ūm, (Jān.)	<i>of January.</i>
Februāriūs, ā, ūm, (Febr.)	<i>of February.</i>
Martiūs, ā, ūm, (Mart.)	<i>of March.</i>
Aprīlis, ě, (Apr.)	<i>of April.</i>
Māiūs, ā, ūm, (Mai.)	<i>of May.</i>
Jūniūs, ā, ūm, (Jūn.)	<i>of June.</i>
Quintīlis, ě, (Quint.)	<i>of July.</i>
Sextīlis, ě, (Sext.)	<i>of August.</i>
Septembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Sept.)	<i>of September.</i>
Octōbĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Oct.)	<i>of October.</i>
Nōvembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Nōv.)	<i>of November.</i>
Dĕcembĕr, brīs, brĕ, (Dĕc.)	<i>of December.</i>

Kālendae, ārūm, (Kāl.) f. pl.,	<i>Calends</i> ; the first day of the Roman month.
Nōnae, ārūm, (Nōn.) f. pl.,	<i>Nones</i> ; the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.
Idūs, uūm, (Id.) f. pl.,	<i>Ides</i> ; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.
prīdlē, (pr. or prīd.) adv.,	<i>the day before.</i>

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Gēnēvam Kālendis¹ ipsis Nōvembris² occūpābit.
 2. Qui dies ērit a. d. VI. Kāl. Nōv.³ (antē diem sextum Kālendae, Nōvembres). 3. C.⁴ Jūlius Caesar Idibus Martiis occīsus est. 4. M. Tullius Cīcero a. d. III. Nōn. Jān. nātus est. 5. P. Scīpio a. d. XVII. Kāl. Māi. mortuus est. 6. Ap. Claudius a. d. VI. Nōn. Apr. īn sēnātu lōcūtus est. 7. Tī. Gracchus Nōnis Jūniis Rōmā⁵ prōfectus est. 8. M. Mānilius ād Rōmam prōfectus est a. d. VI. Id. Sext. 9. Multa verba ōrātōres faciunt a. d. IV. Nōn. Quint. 10. C. Caesar prīd. Nōn.⁶ Febr. castra mōvit. 11. Dixi ēgo īn sēnātu caedem tē contūlis⁷se⁷ princīpum īn a. d. V. Kāl. Nōv. 12. Caedem princīpum contūlisti ex a. d. V. Kāl. Dēc. ād pr. Kāl.⁶ Jān. 13. T. Labiēnus prīd. Id.⁶ Sept. hostes sūpērāvīt. 14. Is dies ērat a. d. V. Kāl. Apr. L. Pīsōne A. Gābīnio consūlībus.⁸ 15. Sī quid vellent, ād Id. Apr. rēvertērentur. 16. Hōrum est nēmo qui nesciat⁹ tē prīd. Kāl.⁶ Jān. stētisse īn cōmītio cūm tēlo.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

1. Caius Cassius was born on the 31st of October. 2. Marcus Flaccus died on the 4th of May. 3. Caius Gracchus was killed on the 25th of January. 4. Titus Labienus set out from Geneva on the 15th of July. 5. Tiberius Gracchus will

break up camp on the 12th of February. 6. Lucius Piso was elected on the 1st of December. 7. That day was the 16th of April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were consuls.⁸ 8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June. 9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of November. 10. There was no one of these who did not know⁹ that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

¹ See 111.² The Latin names of months are adjectives.

³ Such an expression as *antē diem sextum Kālendās Nōvembres* is treated as a *single word*; hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time, as in sentence 4; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2; or it is governed by the prepositions *in*, *ex*, and rarely by *ād*, as in sentences 11 and 12.

⁴ *Caius*: Latin pronunciation, *Kāh-yoos*; English pronunciation, *Kā-yus*.⁵ See 107.⁶ See A. & G. 56, 2, *a*: A. & S. 238, 1, (*b*): B. & M. 1010: H. 437, 1.⁷ From *confēro*.⁸ See 122.

⁹ A. & G. 63, 2: A. & S. 264, 7: B. 301, 5: B. & M. 1218: G. 634: H. 501, I.



LESSON XCI.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *prīma lūce*, at daybreak, at earliest dawn.
2. *multo die*, late in the day.
3. *prīma nocte*, in the first part of the night.
4. *ād multam noctem*, till late at night.
5. *prīdiē ējūs diēi*, on the day before.
6. *postrīdiē ējūs diēi*, on the following day.

Translate and parse.

1. *Prima luce*,¹ quū summus mons ā T. Lābiēno tēnērē-tur,² ipse āb hostium castris nōn longius mille ēt quingentis passibus³ abesset, Considius ēquo⁴ admissō ād eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Lābiēno occūpārī vōluerit,⁵ āb hostibus tēnērī. 2. Multo dēnīquē die pēr explōrātōres Caesar cog-nōvit ēt montem ā suis tēnērī ēt Helvētios castra mōvisse ēt Considium tīmōre perterrītum, quōd nōn vīdisset, prō vīso sibi rēnunciassē.⁶ 3. Cīrcītēr hōmīnum⁷ milia sex pīma nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ād Rhēnum fīnesquē Germānōrum contendērunt. 4. Ad multam noctēm ētiām ād impēdīmenta pugnātum est, proptēreā quōd prō vallo carros objēcērant. 5. Collōquendi⁸ Caesāri causā vīsa nōn est, ēt eo⁹ māgīs, quōd prīdiē ejus diēi¹⁰ Germāni rētīnērī nōn pōtērant, quīn¹¹ īn nōstros tēla conjicērent.¹¹ 6. Postrīdiē ejus diēi¹⁰ praetēr castra Caesāris suas cōpias trādūxit ēt milīb¹² passuum duō-bus ultrā eum castra fēcīt. 7. Postrīdiē ejus diēi Caesar praesīdium utrisque castris, quōd sātīs essē vīsum est, rēli-quit.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed,¹³ and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We stayed at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference⁸ does not seem good to us, and the more⁹ because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling¹¹ missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What is the literal meaning of *prima luce*? Why is the Ablative used?
- ² Why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 62, 2, *b*: A. & S. 263, 5, REM. 2: B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 581, II.: H. 518, II., 1.
- ³ See 133.
- ⁴ See 122; what is the literal meaning of *equo admisso*?
- ⁵ What mood is *völuërit*? Why is that mood used in this clause? See 152.
- ⁶ See L.N. LXXV., NOTE 11.
- ⁷ See L.N. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. ⁸ See 152.
- ⁹ *eo magis, the more*; for *eo*, see 79.
- ¹⁰ See A. & G. 50, 4, *e*, REMARK: A. & S. 212, REM. 4, NOTE 6: B. & M. 1005: H. 411, 2.
- ¹¹ *quin — conjicere, from hurling*; why is the Imperfect used? See 135; why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 65, 1, *b*: A. & S. 202, REM. 10: B. 297, RULE LX.: B. & M. 1218: G. 551: H. 498.
- ¹² See 147.
- ¹³ *at full speed, equis admissis*; why the Plural?



LESSON XCII.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *plūs posse, to be more powerful.*
2. *plūrimū posse, to be the most powerful, or to be very powerful.*
3. *ei grātiās āgēre, to thank him.*
4. *nōbis est in ānīmō iter faciēre, we intend to march.*
5. *lātēre āperto, on the unprotected flank.*
6. *ex ēquis, on horseback.*
7. *mēmōriā tēnēre, to remember.*
8. *maximis pōtest itinēribus, by the longest possible marches.*

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dicit esse nonnullos, qui privātim plus¹ possint² quā ipsi māgistrātus. 2. Nōn erat dubium, quā tōtius Galliae plūrimū¹ Helvētīi possent.³ 3. Dumnōrix grātiā ēt largitiōne apud Sēquānos plūrimū pōterat. 4. Divitiācus dixit eos, qui ēt sua virtūte ēt pōpuli Rōmāni hospitio atque amicitia plūrimū antē in Gallia pōtuisent,² coactos esse⁴ Sēquānis⁵ obsides dāre. 5. Dēcīma lēgio pēr tribūnos militum ei grātiās ēgit. 6. Caesāri rēnunciātūr⁶ Helvētiis⁷ esse in animo pēr agrum Sēquānōrum ēt Aeduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facere. 7. Helvētīi lēgātōs ad eum mittunt⁸ qui dicērent⁹ sibi esse in animo sinē ullo mālēficiō iter pēr prōvinciam facere. 8. Pars aperto latere¹⁰ lēgiōnes circumvenire coepit.¹¹ 9. Capto monte¹² Boii ēt Tulingi nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenire coeperunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur¹³ ēt praeter se dēnos ut ad colloquium adducērent,¹³ postulāvit. 11. Eōrum ūna pars, quā Gallos obtinere dictum est,¹⁴ attingit ab¹⁵ Sēquānis ēt Helvētiis flumen Rhēnum. 12. Id¹⁶ hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quōd undique loci naturā Helvētīi continentur. 13. Mōribus¹⁷ suis Orgetōrigem ex vinculis¹⁸ causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum¹⁹ poenam sequi oportēbat,²⁰ ut igni cremārētur. 14. Caesar, quōd mēmōriā²¹ tēnēbat²² L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitūque ejus ab Helvētiis pulsum²³ ēt sub jugum missum,²³ concēdendum²⁴ nōn putābat. 15. Caesāri quū id²⁵ nunciātum esset,²⁶ eos pēr prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnari,²⁷ mātūrat ab urbe proficisci ēt quā maxīmis potest itinēribus²¹ in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit ēt ad Gēnēvam pervēnit. 16. Itaque re¹² frūmentariā quā celerrīme pōtuit comparātā magnis itinēribus ad Ariovistum contendit. 17. Liscus dicit Dumnōrigem complūres annos²⁸ portoria reliquaque²⁹ omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia parvo pretio redempta habere,³⁰ propterea quōd illo¹² licente contrā licēri audeat³¹ nemo.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See A. & G. 52, 3 : A. & S. 232, (3.) : B. 222, RULE XIII. : B. & M. 728 : G. 331, REMARKS 2 and 3 : H. 380.

² Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause ? See 152.

³ Why the Subjunctive ? See LN. XCI., NOTE 11.

⁴ From *cōgo*.

⁵ See 39.

⁶ What is the subject of *rēnunciātur* ? What is it that *is reported to Caesar* ?

⁷ See 137 ; what is it that *the Helvetii intend* (have in mind) *to do* ? What then is the subject of *essē* ?

⁸ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.

⁹ See 136 and Example 10 ; what question does *qui dicērent* answer ?

¹⁰ *lātēre* is an Ablative of *Place*, answering the question *Where* ?

¹¹ What kind of a verb is *coepit* ? See 127.

¹² See 122.

¹³ See 136 and Example 9.

¹⁴ What is the subject of *dictum est* ?

¹⁵ *ab*, on the side of.

¹⁶ *id* — *quōd*, he persuaded them to this the more easily, because ; lit., he persuaded this to them, etc. ; for *hōc*, see 79.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.

¹⁸ *ex vinculis*, in chains ; what is its literal meaning ?

¹⁹ *damnātum*, if condemned ; see 121 ; it modifies *eū* understood, the object of *sēqui*.

²⁰ What kind of a verb is *oportēbat* ? See 128 ; what is its subject ? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.

²¹ See 54.

²² What kind of a clause is *quōd* — *tēnēbat* ? See 149 ; what is the object of *tēnēbat* ?

²³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

²⁴ *concedendum*, sc. *essē* ; translate, *that it ought to be granted*.

²⁵ To what does *id* refer ? What *had been reported* to Caesar ?

²⁶ See LN. XCI., NOTE 2.

²⁷ *cōnārī* is in apposition with *id*.

²⁸ See 93.

²⁹ See LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 1.

³⁰ *rēdempta hābere*, had bought up.

³¹ What kind of a verb is *audeat* ? See A. & G. 35, 2 : A. & S. 142, 2 : B. 110, a : B. & M. 312 : G. 182 : H. 271, 3.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.



I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvius laqueis irretītus muscūlum exorāvit, ut eum, corrōsis plagis, liberāret. Quo facto, milvius liberātus murem arripuit et devorāvit.

Haec fabūla ostendit, quam gratiam mali pro beneficiis reddere soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stans in tecto domus, lupo praetereunti maledixit. Cui lupo, *Non tu, inquit, sed tectum mihi maledicīt.*

Saepe locus et tempus homīnes timīdos audāces reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pavo, coram grue pennas suas explicans, *Quanta est, inquit, formositas mea et tua deformitas!* At grus evōlans, *Et quanta est, inquit, levitas mea et tua tarditas!*

Monet haec fabūla, ne ob aliquod bonum, quod nobis natūra tribuit, alios contemnāmus, quibus natūra alia et fortasse majōra dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in alta rupe stantem conspicātus, *Cur non, inquit, relinquis nuda illa et sterilia loca, et huc descendis in herbīdos campos, qui tibi laetum pabūlum offērunt?* Cui respondit capra: *Mihi non est in anīmo dulcia tutis praepōnere.*

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis jacēbat in praesēpi bovesque latrando a pabūlo arcēbat. Cui unus boum, *Quanta ista, inquit, invidia est, quod non patēris! ut eo cibo vescāmur, quem tu ipse capere nec velis nec possis!*

Haec fabūla invidiae indōlem declārat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Vulpes, quae nunquam leōnem vidērat, quum ei forte occurrisset, ita est perterrita, ut paene morerētur formidīne. Eundem conspicāta itērum, timuit quidem, sed nequāquam, ut antea. Tertio illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius accedēre eumque allōqui.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prato pascebantur tres boves in maxīma concordia, et sic ab omni ferārum incursiōne tuti erant. Sed dissidio inter illos orto, singūli a feris petīti et laniātī sunt.

Fabūla docet quantum boni sit in concordia.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asīnus, pelle leōnis indūtus, territābat homīnes et bestias tamquam leo esset. Sed forte, dum se celerius movet, aures

eminēbant; unde agnītus in pistrīnum abductus est, ubi poenas petulantiae dedit.

Haec fabūla stolidos notat, qui immerītis honoribus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae ei quotidie ovum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit, illam auri massam intus celāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in ea repērit, nis quod in aliis gallinis reperīri solet. Itāque dum majoribus divitiis inhiābat, etiam minores perdidit.



10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo qui unā iter faciēbant, asīnum oberrantem in solitudine conspicātī, accurrunt laeti, et uterque eum sibi vindicāre coepit, quod eum prior conspexisset. Dum vero contendunt et rixantur, nec a verberibus abstinent, asīnus aufūgit et neuter eo potitur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubīcen ab hostibus captus, *Ne me, inquit, interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.* At hostes, *Propter hoc ipsum,* inquiunt, *te interimēmus, quod, quum ipse pugnandi sis imperītus, alios ad pugnam incitāre soles.*

Fabūla docet, non solum malefīcos esse puniendos sed etiam eos, qui alios ad male faciendum irrītent.

12. Sour Grapes.

Vulpes uvam in vite conspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium virium suārum contentiōne, si eam forte attingere posset.



Tandem defatigāta ināni labōre discēdens dixit : *At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eas in via repertas tollērem.*

Haec fabūla docet, multos ea contemnere, quae se assēqui posse despērent.

13. The Mice.

Mures aliquando habuērunt consilium, quomōdo sibi a fele cavērent. Multis aliis propositis, omnibus placuit ut ei tintinnabulum annecterētur; sic enim ipsos sonitu admonitos eam fugere posse. Sed quum jam inter mures quaererētur, qui feli tintinnabulum annecteret, nemo repertus est.

Fabūla docet, in suadendo plurimos esse audāces, sed in ipso pericūlo timīdos.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucibus lupi os inhaeserat. Mercēde igitur condūcit gruem, qui illud extrahat. Hoc grus longitudine colli facile effēcit. Quum autem mercēdem postulāret, subrīdens lupus et dentibus infrendens, *Num tibi, inquit, parva merces videtur, quod caput incolūme ex lupi faucibus extraxisti?*

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antiquissimis temporibus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicitur. Ibi haud procul a Janicūlo arcem condidit, eamque Saturniam appellavit. Hic Itālos primus agriculturam docuit.

Latīnus and Aenēas.

2. Postea Latīnus in illis regionibus imperāvit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asia eversa est. Hinc Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, cum multis Trojānis, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, aufugit et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rex ei benigne recepto filiam Laviniam in matrimonium dedit. Aenēas urbem condidit, quam in honōrem conjūgis Lavinium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accēpit. Hic sedem regni in alium locum transtūlit, urbemque condidit in monte Albāno, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem a Lavinia genitus erat. Ejus postēri omnes usque ad Romam conditam Albae regnavērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

4. Unus horum regum, Romūlus Silvius, se Jove majōrem esse dicēbat, et, quum tonāret, militibus imperāvit, ut clypeos hastis percutērent, dicebatque hunc sonum multo clariōrem esse quam tonitru. Fulmīne ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Procas, rex Albanōrum, duos filios reliquit Numitōrem et Amulium. Horum minor natu, Amulius, fratri optiōnem dedit, utrum regnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numītor paterna bona praetūlit; Amulius regnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amulius, ut regnum firmissime possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidias interēmit et filiam fratris Rheam Silviam

Vestālem virgīnem fecit. Nam his Vestae sacerdotībus non licet viro nubere. Sed haec a Marte gemīnos filios Romūlum et Remum pepērit. Hoc quum Amulius comperisset, matrem in vincūla conjēcit, puēros autem in Tibērim abjēci jussit.

7. Forte Tibēris aqua ultrā ripam se effudērat, et, quum puēri in vado essent posīti, aqua refluens eos in sicco reliquit. Ad dōrum vagitum lupa accurrit, eosque uberībus suis aluit. Quod videns Faustūlus quidam, pastor illius regiōnis, puēros sustulit et uxōri Accae Laurentiae nutriendos dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Romūlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transegerunt. Quum adolevisset et forte comperisset quis ipsōrum avus, quae mater fuisset, Amulium interfecērunt et Numitōri avo regnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīno quam Romūlus a suo nomīne Romam vocāvit. Haec quum moenībus circumdarētur, Remus occisus est, dum fratrem irrīdens moenia transiliēbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Romūlus, ut civium numērum augeret, asyllum patefecit, ad quod multi ex civitatībus suis pulsī accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis civībus conjūges deērant. Festum itaque Neptūni et ludos instituit. Ad hos quum multi ex finitīmīs popūlis cum mulierībus et libēris venissent, Romāni inter ipsos ludos spectantes virgīnes rapuērunt.

War with the Sabines. — Tarpeia.

10. Popūli illi, quorum virgīnes raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōres suscepērunt. Quum Romae appropinquārent, forte in Tarpeiam virgīnem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra pro-

curābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret, eīque permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscēret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistris manibus gerērent, ānulos aureos et armillas significans. At hostes in arcem ab ea perducti scutīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manibus gerēbant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11. Tum Romūlus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenēbat, pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum est. In media caede raptae processērunt, et hinc patres hinc conjūges et socēros complectebantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facerent. Utrīque his precibus commōti sunt. Romūlus foedus icit et Sabīnos in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. — His Death.

12. Postea civitātem descripsit. Centum senatōres legit eosque quum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iis debītā patres appellāvit. Plebem in triginta curias distribuit, easque raptārum nominibus nuncupāvit. Anno regni tricesīmo septīmo, quum exercitum lustrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente oculis homīnum subductus est. Hinc alii eum a senatoribus interfectum, alii ad deos sublātum esse existimavērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius, B. C. 716 – 673.

13. Post Romūli mortem unius anni interregnum fuit. Quo elapso, Numa Pompilius Curibus, urbe in agro Sabinōrum, natus rex creātus est. Hic vir bellum quidem nullum gessit; nec minus tamen civitāti profuit. Nam et leges dedit, et sacra plurīma instituit, ut popūli barbāri et bellicōsi mores molliret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, se nymphae Egeriae,

conjūgis suæ, jussu facere dicēbat. Morbo decessit, quadragēmo tertio impēri anno.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius, B. C. 673 – 641.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cujus avus se in bello adversus Sabīnos fortem et strenuum virum praestitērat. Rex creātus bellum Albānis indixit, idque trigeminōrum Horatiōrum et Curiatiōrum certamīne finīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Metti Fufēti diruit. Quum triginta duobus annis regnasset, fulmīne ictus cum domo sua arsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius, B. C. 640 – 616.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, suscepit imperium. Hic vir aequitate et religiōne avo similis, Latīnos bello domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova ei moenia circumdedit. Carcerem primus aedificāvit. Ad Tibēris ostia urbem condidit, Ostiamque vocāvit. Vicesīmo quarto anno impēri morbo obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus, B. C. 616 – 578.

16. Deinde regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Demarāti filius, qui tyrannos patriae Corinthi fugiens in Etruriam venērat. Ipse Tarquinius, qui nomen ab urbe Tarquiniis accēpit, aliquando Romam profectus erat. Advenienti aquila pileum abstulit, et, postquam alte evolavērat, reposuit. Hinc Tanāquil conjux, mulier auguriōrum perita, regnum ei portendi intellexit.

17. Quum Romae commorarētur, Anci regis familiaritatem consecutus est, qui eum filiōrum suōrum tutōrem reliquit. Sed is pupillis regnum intercēpit. Senatoribus, quos Romūlus creavērat, centum alios addidit, qui minōrum gentium sunt

appellāti. Plura bella feliciter gessit, nec paucos agros hostibus ademptos urbis territorio adjunxit. Primus triumphans urbem intravit. Cloacas fecit; Capitolium inchoavit. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno per Anci filios, quibus regnum eripuērat, occisus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius, B. C. 578 – 534.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex nobili femina, captiva tamen et familia. Quum in domo Tarquini Prisci educaretur, flamma in ejus capite visa est. Hoc prodigio Tanquil ei summam dignitatem portendi intellexit, et conjugii persuasit, ut eum sicuti liberos suos educaret. Quum adolevisset, rex ei filiam in matrimonium dedit.

19. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset, Tanquil de superiore parte domus populum allocuta est, dicens; *regem grave quidem sed non letale vulnus accepisse; eum petere, ut populus, dum convalesceret, Servio Tullio obediret.* Sic Servius regnare coepit, sed bene imperium administravit. Montes tres urbi adjunxit. Primus omnium censum ordinavit. Sub eo Roma habuit octoginta tria milia civium Romanorum cum his, qui in agris erant.

20. Hic rex interfectus est scelere filiae Tulliae et Tarquini Superbi, filii ejus regis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipso Tarquinio de gradibus curiae dejectus, quum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properavit, et prima conjugem regem salutavit. Quum domum rediret, aurigam super patris corpus in via jacens carpentum agere jussit.

**Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome,
B. C. 534 – 510.**

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognomen moribus meruit. Bello tamen strenuus plures finitimorum populorum vicit. Tem-

plum Jovis in Capitolio aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Lati, imperium perdīdit. Nam quum filius ejus Lucretiae, nobilissimae femīnae, conjūgi Tarquini Collatini, vim fecisset, haec se ipsam occīdit in conspectu marīti, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eos obtestāta fuērāt, ut hanc injuriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatinus, aliīque nonnulli in exitium regis conjurārunt, populōque persuasērunt, ut ei portas urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, qui civitātem Ardeam cum rege oppugnābat, eum reliquit. Fugit itāque cum uxōre et libēris suis. Ita Romae septem reges regnavērunt annos ducentos quadraginta tres.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

1. *ut* — *liberāret*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. — *corrōsis plagis*, by gnawing the nets; see 122. — *quo*, see 122; what is its antecedent? — *ostendit*, what is its object? — *mali*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *soleant*, see 151 and LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

2. *lupo*, see 132. — *praetereunti* (*praeter* and *eo*), see 126; translate the Participle by a Relative Clause. — *inquit*, see A. & G. 38, 2, *b*: A. & S. 183, 5: B. 111, c, 2: B. & M. 444: G. 190 2: H. 297, II., 2. — *reddit*, see A. & G. 49, 1, *d*: A. & S. 209, REM. 12, (2): B. 287, a: B. & M. 644: G. 281, EXCEPTION 1: H. 463, I.

3. *explicans*, *spreading*. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *aliquod*, see 116, *a*. — *quod*, see 34 and 115. — *contemnāmus*, see 136. — *alia, majōra*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

4. *laetum*, *abundant*. — *mihi*, see 137. — *est*, what is its subject? — *dulcia*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1. — *tutis*, see 67.

5. *boves*, see A. & G. 11, III., 4, *d*, NOTE: A. & S. 83, II., REMARK 1; 84, Exc. 1: B. 138: B. & M. 123: G. 80: H. 66. — *latrando*, see 153

and 54. — *quod* — *patēris*, see 149. — *cibo*, see 54 and 104. — *velis*, see 125 and LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *occurrisset*, see A. & G. 62, 2, *b*: A. & S. 263, 5, REM. 2: B. 304, RULE LXV.: B. & M. 1244: G. 581, II.: H. 518, II. — *moreretur*, see 139. — *nequāquam*, *antea*, what do they modify? — *obviam facta*, *having met*; *obviam* is used with the Dative. — *ansa est*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. *pascebantur*, what does the Imperfect Tense denote? see 36. — *boves*, see note on *boves*, Fable 5. — *petiti*, sc. *sunt*. — *boni*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *sit*, see 151.

8. *pelle*, see 54. — *indūtus*, *having clothed himself*. — *esset*, see A. & G. 61, 1: A. & S. 263, 2: G. 604: H. 506. — *movet*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 11. — *unde*, *for which reason*, i. e. because his ears stuck out. — *agnitus*, from *agnosco*; render as if it were *agnitus est*, and supply *and*. — *dedit*, *suffered*. — *honoribus*, see 79.

9. *suspiciari*, see 69. — *coepit*, see 127. — *illam*, why in the Accusative? why Feminine? — *quod* is here equivalent to *id quod*; compare the English *what*, equivalent to *that which*. — *solet*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *majoribus*, see 84 and 85. — *divitiis*, see 67. — *minores*, what does it modify?

10. *duo*, see 108 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *accurrant*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1. — *laeti*, *joyfully*; see A. & G. 47, 6: A. & S. 205, REM. 15: B. 270, *b*: B. & M. 663: G. 324, REMARK 6: H. 443. — *prior*, see note on *laeti*; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned. — *conspexisset*, see 149. — *eo*, see 104.

11. *tubicān*, what is its derivation? see GEN. VY. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *interficiēte*, see 47. — *inermis*, derivation? see GEN. VY. — *propter hoc ipsum*, *for this very reason*; what is the reason? — *pugnandi*, see 153 and 140. — *sis*, see 145. — *soles*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *esse puniendos*, see 130. — *eos*, why in the Accusative? — *irritent*, see A. & G. 65, 2: A. & S. 264, 1. (*a*): B. 301: B. & M. 1220, *b*: G. 633: H. 500, 2, *last part*.

12. *vulpes*, see A. & G. 6, 4: A. & S. 33: B. 118, III., REM. 2: B. & M. 41: G. 20, 3: H. 43, 3. — *omnium* — *contentiōne*, *with all its might*; what is the literal translation? for the Abl. *contentiōne*, see 54. — *si*, (*to see*) *whether*. — *posset*, see 151. — *repertas*, from *reperio*; see 121. — *tollērem*, see 143 and A. & G. 60, 1, *a*: A. & S. 261, REM. 4: B. 305, *third clause*: G. 594, 2: H. 503, 2, 1). — *quae*, see 34. — *se*, see 53. — *desperēt*, see note on *irritent*, Fable 11.

13. *quomōdo*, (*to see*) *by what means*. — *sibi*, see A. & G. 51, 2, *a*, 3: A. & S. 223: B. 239: B. & M. 836: G. 347: H. 385, 3. — *cavērent*,

see 151. — *aliis*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1 and 122. — *placuit*, what is its subject? — *annecteretur*, see A. & G. 70, 4, a: A. & S. 262, REM. 3: B. 301, RULE LXII.: B. & M. 1222: G. 538: H. 495, 2. — *sic — posse*; this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as *they thought, they said*. — *quaereretur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6; what is the subject of *quaereretur*? — *suadendo*, see 153. — *plurimos*, see 85 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

14. *inhaeserat*, from *inhaereo*. — *mercède*, see 146. — *extrahat*, see 136. — *hoc*, what was *this* that the crane accomplished? — *postularet*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *num*, what answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1. — *merces*, see 64. — *videtur*, what is its subject? — *faucibus*, how declined in the Singular? in the Plural? See GEN. VY.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

1. *Janicūlo*, the *Janiculum* is a hill on the west side of the Tiber; the *seven hills* are on the east side; these are the *Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, Aventine, Coelian, Esquiline*, and *Viminal*. — *eam Saturniam*, see 58. — *Itālos, agricultūram*, see 71. — *primus — docuit*, *was the first who taught*; see A. & G. 47, 6: A. & S. 205, REM. 15: B. 271, REMARK: B. & M. 663: G. 324, 7: H. 442, 1.

2. *in — regionibus*; what country is meant? — *sub*, in the reign of. — *Troja, Troy* is said to have been destroyed in B. C. 1184. — *hinc*, from this place, i. e. from Troy. — *Aenēae, Anchisae*, how declined? See A. & G. 9, 3: A. & S. 44: B. 125: B. & M. 52: G. 72: H. 50. — *quibus*, see 132. — *Lavinium* was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles from the coast.

3. *Aenēae*, see note on *Aenēae* in preceding section. — *transtūlit*, see 123. — *Albam Longam, Alba Longa* was about 16 miles southeast of Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking the Alban Lake. — *secutus est*, *succeeded*. — *genitus erat*, from *gigno*. — *ad Romam conditam*, *until the founding of Rome*; what is the literal translation? — *Albae*, see 106.

4. *Jove*, see 133 and A. & G. 11, III., 4, b: A. & S. 85: B. 138: B. & M. 123: H. 66, 3. — *tonāret*, see 128 and note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *multo*, see 144. — *tonitru*, what case? why? — *ictus*, sc. *est*. — *Albanum Lacum*, see note on *Albam Longam* in section 3.

5. *minor natu* = *junior*; for *natu*, see 124. — *vellet*, see 125 and 151. *reliquisset*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *vestālem virgīnem*, a *vestal virgin* was bound by a vow of chastity; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. — *licet*, what is its subject? — *viro nubēre*, to marry; for *viro*, see 132; what does *nubēre* mean? — *pepērit*, from *pario*. — *hoc*, what was it that Amulius had found out?

7. *essent posīti*, see A. & G. 62, 2, e: A. & S. 263, 5: B. 302, 1: B. & M. 1251: G. 587: H. 518, I. — *quod*, what is its antecedent? what did a certain *Faustulus* see? — *regiōnis*, what region is meant? — *nutriendos*, to be nourished, modifies *pueros*, and expresses the purpose of *dedit*.

8. *adolevisset*, from *adolesco*; see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *quis*, see 64. — *avus*, sc. *fuisse* and see 151. — *monte Aventino*, *Mount Aventine*, one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.

9. *civibus*, see A. & G. 51, 3, a: A. & S. 226, REM. 2: B. 242, REM. 3: B. & M. 820: H. 386, 2. — *inter*, in the midst of. — *ipsos*, very. — *spectantes*, translate by a relative clause.

10. *Romae*, see 67. — *in incidērunt*, they came unexpectedly upon. — *quod*, see note on *quod*, Fable 9. — *gerērent*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5. — *et ea*, these also, i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.

11. *Montem Tarpeium*, the *Tarpeian mount*; probably the Capitoline hill. — *forum Romanum*, the *Roman Forum*, an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings; here the Roman people, the *Populus Romanus*, met to transact business. — *media*, midst of. — *raptae*, sc. *mulieres*. — *hinc* — *hinc*, here — there. — *utrique*, who are meant? — *icit*, compare the English expression, *strike a bargain*; the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of *ico*.

12. *quum* — *tum*, both — and. — *raptarum*, sc. *mulierum*. — *inter*, in the midst of. — *ortam*, which had arisen. — *oculis*, see 67. — *hinc*, i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentence. — *alii* — *alii*, some — others. — *interfectum*, sc. *esse*. — *sublatum esse* from *tollo*.

13. *quo*, what is its antecedent? — *Curibus*, see 106. — *jussu*, see 79. *facere*, what is its object? — *morbo decessit*, i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings; with *decessit* supply *de vita*.

14. *praestiterat*, what does it govern? see 58. — *creatus*, see LN. LXIII. and EXAMPLES. — *Horatiorum*. The Horatii fought for Rome, the Curiatii for Alba. The three Curiatii fell, but one of the Horatii survived; this gave the victory to the Romans. — *Metti Fufsti*, see 17; for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed

to Rome and located on the Coelian hill ; this was the origin of the Roman *Plebs*. — *annis* expresses *duration of time* ; what is the more usual construction ? see 93. — *arsit*, fr. *ardeo*, *ardere*, *arsi*, *arsum*, *burn*.

15. *aquitate*, see 124. — *avo*, see 86. — *bello*, see 54. — *ei*, see A. & G. 51, 1, c : A. & S. 249, REM. 3 : B. 242, REM. 3 : B. & M. 859 : G. 348 : H. 384, II., 1. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *obiit*, see 126 and note on *morbo decessit*, section 13.

16. *deinde*, i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius. — *qui* refers to *Demarati*. — *advententi*, sc. *ei* and see A. & G. 51, 2, e : A. & S. 224, REM. 1 : B. 242, REM. 3 : B. & M. 829 : H. 386, 2. — *abstulit* from *aufëro*, *auffero*, *abstuli*, *ablätum*, *carry off* ; derived from *ab away, off* ; and *fero carry*. — *anguriorum*, see 140.

17. *Romas*, see 106. — *commoraretur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *tutorem*, as *guardian* ; compare 58. — *pupillis*, see 67. — *gentium* modifies *senatores* understood. — *plura*, *several* ; how declined ? See LN. LXXXIV., NOTE 11. — *ademptos*, from *adimo*. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *Cloacas*. The main *sewer*, known as the *Cloaca Maxima*, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use. — *Capitolium*, the *Cupitol*, signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. — *per filios*, at the instigation of the sons ; they hired assassins to murder him : a *filiis* would signify that they killed him with their own hands. — *quibus*, see note on *ei*, section 16.

18. *genitus*, from *gigno*. — *captiva*, see 25. — *domo*, how declined ? See 97. — *conjügi*, see 132 and Ex. 1. — *educaret*, see 136.

19. *domus* ; this stood on the Palatine. — *regem* — *obediret* ; change this to the Direct Discourse ; see 152. — *eum* refers to *regem*. — *coepit*, see 127. — *montes* — *adjunxit*. The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. — *milis*, how declined ? see 108. — *civium*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

20. *scelere*, see 79. — *filiae*, see 25. — *curiae*. The *senate-house* stood near the Forum. — *domum*, see 105 ; how declined ? — *prima*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *regem*, as *king* ; compare 58.

21. *cognömen*, i. e. *Superbus*, the *Proud*. — *moribus*, see 79. — *bello*, see 111. — *plures*, how declined ? see note on *plura*, section 17. — *populorum*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *Templum*. This *temple* had been begun by Tarquinius Priscus ; see section 17. — *Jovis*, how declined ? see note on *Jove*, section 4. — *Lucretiae*, see 39. — *vim*, how declined ? See GEN. VY. — *ut* — *uloiscerentur*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

22. *in, for.* — *conjurarunt*, see LN. LXXV., NOTE 11. — *populo*, see 132. — *ei*, against him ; see 39. — *civitatem* = *urbem*. — *Ardea* was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in SMALL CAPITALS are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page ix.

A.

A., abbreviation of *Aulus*, a Roman praenomen.

āb, ā, prep. w. abl. *from, away from; by; on the side of.*

ab-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (ab away, duco lead), lead away. **ABDUCT, ABDUCTION.**

ab-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm (ab away, down; jacio cast), cast away or down. **ABJECT.**

abs-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnui, tentūm (ab(s) from, teneo keep), keep from, **ABSTAIN. ABSTINENCE.**

ab-sūm, essē, fui (ab away, sum be) be away, be **ABSENT, be distant.**

āc. See **atquē.**

Accā, ae, f., Acca Lārentia, the wife of Faustulus.

ac-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (ad towards, cedo go), go towards, draw near, approach; assault. **ACCEDE, ACCESSION.**

ac-cīdo, cīdērē, cīdī (ad upon, cado fall), fall upon, befall, happen. **ACCIDENT.**

ac-cīpio, cīpērē, cēpī, ceptūm (ad to one's self, capio take), receive, **ACCEPT, take.**

ac-curro, currērē, cūcurī and curī, cursūm (ad to, curro run), run to, hasten to.

accūso, ārē, āvī, atūm (ad to, causa a lawsuit), **ACCUSE, blame, censure. ACCUSATION.**

ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē, sharp. ACRID.

acerbūs, ā, ūm, sour. ACERBITY.

āciēs, āciēi, f., edge; line, line of battle; army in battle-array.

See **agmen**.

ācritēr, ācritūs, ācerrīmē, adv. (acer sharp), sharply, fiercely, violently.

ād, prep. w. acc. to, towards; for; near; w. numerals, about; w. names of towns, towards, in or into the vicinity of.

ād-āmo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (ad denoting a beginning, amo love), begin to love, acquire a liking for.

ad-dō, dērē, dīdī, dītūm (ad to, beside; do put), ADD.

ad-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (ad to, duco lead), lead to, lead; influence.

ād-eo, irē, ii, itūm (ad to, eo go), go to. See 126.

ād-īmo, imērē, ōmī, emptūm (ad to one's self, emo take), take away.

ādītūs, ūs, m. (adeo go to), approach, access.

ad-jungo, jungērē, junxī, junc-tūm (ad to, jungo join), join to, join.

ad-mīnistro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (ad without additional force, ministro serve), ADMINISTER, manage. ADMINISTRATION, ADMINISTRATOR.

ad-mitto, mittērē, misī, missūm (ad to, mīto let go), allow, ADMIT; give the reins to; equo admissō, at full speed. AD-MISSION.

ad-mōneo, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm (ad w. no perceptible additional force, moneo admonish), ADMONISH, warn. ADMONITION.

ādōlesco, adōlescērē, adōlōvī, ādultūm (adoleo cause to grow up), grow, increase, grow up. ADULT.

ad-sūm, ad-essē, af-fuī (ad near, sum be), be near, be present; assist.

ad-vēnio, venīrē, vēnī, ventūm (ad to, venio come), come to, arrive, come. ADVENTURE.

adventūs, ūs, m. (advenio come to), arrival, approach. ADVENT.

adversūs and adversūm, prep. w. acc. towards, against.

ad-vertō, vertērē, vertī, ver-sūm (ad towards, verto turn), turn towards; id animum ad-vertēre, to turn the mind towards it, to perceive it. AD-VERT.

aedīficiūm, ī, n. (aedifico build), building, EDIFICE.

aedīfīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (aedes building for habitation, facio make), build. EDIFY, EDIFICATION.

Aeduī, ōrūm, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul.

aegēr, aegrā, aegrūm, sick.

Aenēas, ae, m., a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchises.

aequītās, ātīs, f. (aequus fair, equitable), EQUITY, justice, moderation.

aequūs, ā, ūm, even, level;

EQUAL; like; fair, equitable.

aestās, ātis, f., summer.

aetās, ātis, f., age.

af-fero, af-ferre, at-tŭli, al-lātŭm
(ad to, fero bring), bring to,
carry to; offer; carry.

af-ficio, ficere, feci, fectŭm (ad
to, facio do), AFFECT, influence;
magno dolore affici, to be very
grievously affected.

āger, agrī, m., field, land; country,
territory.

aggēr, aggērīs, m., mound; mate-
rials for a mound.

ag-grēdior, grēdi, gressŭs sŭm
(ad to, gradior go), go to, ap-
proach; go against, attack. AG-
GRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.

agmen, agminīs, n. (ago put in
motion), army on the march,
line of march; [acies, army in
battle array; exercitus, a dis-
ciplined army]; **agmen novis-**
simum, the rear; primum
agmen, the van.

ag-nosco, noscere, nōvi, nītŭm
(ad denoting reference, (g)nos-
co know), recognize; know.

āgo, āgere, ēgi, actŭm, put in
motion; lead, drive, conduct; act,
do, perform. ACTION, AGENT.

agricultūra, ae, f. (ager field,
colo cultivate), AGRICULTURE.

ālācer, ālacrīs, ālacrē, lively,
cheerful; eager, fierce.

ālacrītās, ātis, f. (alacer lively),
liveliness, eagerness, zeal. ALAC-
RITY.

Albā or Albā Longā, the mother
city of Rome, built by Ascanius.

Albānūs, ī, m., an Alban, an in-
habitant of Alba.

aliquandō, adv. (aliquis some
one), at some time, once, for-
merly.

āliquis, indef. pron. [see 116, a],
some one, somebody, something,
some; any one, anybody, anything,
any.

āliūs, āliā, āliūd [see 24], other,
another.

Allobrōgēs, um, m. pl., a people
in the southeastern part of
Gaul.

al-lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtŭs sŭm
(ad to, loquor speak), speak to,
address.

ālo, ālerē, ālui, ālitŭm or al-
tŭm, nourish, feed, support.

Alpēs, Alpiŭm, f. pl. the ALPS.

altē, altiūs, altissimē (altus
high, low), on high, highly; low,
lowly.

altēr, altērā, altērŭm [see 24],
one of two, the other, the second;
altēr — altēr, the one — the
other.

altitŭdo, altitŭdīnis, f. (altus
high, deep), height; depth; ALTI-
TUDE.

altūs, ā, ūm (alo nourish), high,
lofty; deep.

āmicitiā, ae, f. (amicus friendly),
friendship.

āmicŭs, ā, ūm (amo love), loving,
friendly; **āmicŭs, ī, m. friend.**
AMICABLE.

ā-mitto, mittērē, miā, missūm (ab away, mitto let go), lose.
amplio, ārē, āvi, ātūm (amplus of large extent), enlarge.
ampliūs, adv. more, farther.
Amuliūs, i, m., son of Silvius Procas and brother of Numitor.
ān, adv. or.
Anchisēs, ae, m., a Trojan, the father of Aenēas.
Ancūs Marciūs, i, m., the fourth king of Rome.
angustiae, ārūm, f. pl. (angustus narrow), narrow pass, defile; difficulty.
ānīm-ad-vertō, vertērē, vertī, versūm (animus mind, ad-vertō turn towards), notice. ANIM-ADVERT, ANIMADVERSION.
ānīmā, ānīmālīs, n., ANIMAL.
ānīmūs, i, m., mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage. [animus denotes the human soul, including all its faculties, including mens; mens denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]
an-nectō, nectērē, nexuī, nexūm (ad to, necto tie, fasten), tie to, fasten to. ANNEX.
annūs, i, m., year. ANNUAL.
antē, prep. w. acc., before; adv. before, previously. ANTE in ANTECEDENT, etc.
anteā, adv. (ante before, ea that), before, previously.
antiquūs, ā, ūm (ante before), ancient, old; of long continuance. ANTIQUE, ANTIQUATED.
ānūlūs, i, m., ring. ANNULAR.

Ap., abbreviation of Appius, a Roman prænomen.
āpertūs, ā, ūm (aperio uncover), uncovered, unprotected.
ap-pello, ārē, āvi, ātūm (ad to, pello bring one's self to a person), address; name, call. AP-PEAL, APPELLATION.
ap-prōpinquo, ārē, āvi, ātūm (ad to, propinquo draw near), draw near to, approach.
āpūd, prep. w. acc., at, near, in presence of, among.
āquā, ae, f., water. AQUEDUCT.
āquilā, ae, f., eagle.
Aquilēiā, ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.
Aquītāni, ōrūm, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.
Aquītāniā, ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.
Arār, Arāris, acc. Arārim, m., the Saône [pronounced Sōne], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.
arcesso, arcessērē, arcessivī, arcessitūm, invite, summon.
arceo, arcērē, arcuī, drive away; ward off, keep from; restrain.
Ardea, ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutūli.
armā, ōrūm, n. pl., ARMS, weapons.
armillā, ae, f., bracelet or ring, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.
Ariovistus, i, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar.

ar-rīpio, rīpērē, rīpuī, reptūm
(ad upon, rapio seize), seize upon.

arrōgantiā, ae, f. (arrogans assuming), haughtiness, insolence, ARROGANCE.

Arvernī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people
in the eastern part of Aquitania.

arx, arcīs, f. citadel, fortress.

Ascaniūs, ī, m., son of Aeneas.

Asia, ae, f., ASIA.

āsīnūs, ī, m., an ass.

as-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm
(ad with no perceptible additional force, sequor follow), follow; overtake; obtain.

āsylūm, ī, n. ASYLUM.

āt, conj. but.

at-tingo, tingērē, tīgī, tactūm
(ad against, tango touch), touch against, border upon; touch, reach.

atque, āc, conj. (ad in addition, que and), and also, and.

auctōritās, ātīs, f. (auctor producer), AUTHORITY, influence.

audāciā, ae, f. (audax bold), boldness, AUDACITY.

audācītēr or audactēr, audāciūs, audācissimē, adv. (audax bold), boldly, courageously.

audax, gen. audācis (audeo dare), bold, daring, AUDACIOUS.

audeo, audērē, ausūs sūm [see LN. XCII., NOTE 31], dare, venture.

audio, irē, ivī, itūm, hear. AUDIT, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.

au-fūgio, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgītūm
(ab away, fugio flee), flee away, escape; flee.

augeo, augērē, auxī, auctūm, increase, AUGMENT.

augūrium, ī, n. (augur fr. augur diviner), AUGURY, divination.

aureūs, ā, ūm (aurum gold), golden.

aurīgā, ae, m. (aurea bridle, ago manage), charioteer.

aurīs, aurīs, f. ear. AURI-CULAR.

aurūm, ī, n., gold.

aut, conj. or; **aut — aut, eūher — or.**

autēm, conj., but, yet, moreover.

auxilium, ī, n. (augeo increase), help, aid; pl. AUXILIARIES.

Aventinūs, ī, m., the Aventine.

aversūs, ā, ūm (averto turn away), turned away; **aversus hostis, a retreating enemy.**

ā-verto, vertērē, vertī, versūm
(ab away, verto turn), turn away, turn aside, AVERT. AVERSION.

āvūs, ī, m., grandfather.

B.

barbārūs, ā, ūm, foreign; uncivilized; savage, rude, BARBAROUS. BARBARIAN.

beātūs, ā, ūm (beo bless), happy. BEATIFIC.

Belgae, ārūm, m. pl., a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul.

bellīcōsūs, ā, ūm, *warlike*.
bello, āre, āvi, atūm (*bellum war*), *carry on war*.
bellūm ī, n., *war*.
bēnē, adv., *well, finely*.
bēnēficiūm, ī, n., *kindness*, BENEFIT. BENEFICIAL.
bēnignē, adv. (*benignus kind*), *kindly*; BENIGNLY. BENIGN, BENIGNANT.
bestiā, ae, f., BEAST.
Bibractē, īs, n., the chief town of the Aedui.
biennium, ī, n. (*his twice, annus year*), *two years*. BIENNIAL.
Bōi, ōrūm, m. pl., the Boii [pronounced Bō-yi], a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany.
bōnūs, ā, ūm, *good, friendly*; bōnūm, ī, n. *a good thing, an advantage*; bōnā, ōrūm, n. pl., *goods, an estate*.
bōs, bōvis, m. and f., *ox, cow*.
brēvis, brēvē, *short*, BRIEF.
Brūtūs, ī, m. (*brutus stupid*), L. Junius Brutus, the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion.

C.

C., abbreviation of Cāiūs [pronounced Cā-yus], a Roman praenomen.
caedēs, caedis, f. (*caedo kill*), *murder, slaughter, carnage*.
caedo, caedēre, cecidi, caesum, *cut, cut down; kill, mur-*

der. -CIDE in PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE, etc.
Caesār, Caesāris, m., Caius Julius Caesar, a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.
Cāiūs Vālēriūs Procillus, a distinguished Gaul, friend of Caesar.
cālāmītās, ātis, f., CALAMITY, *disaster, misfortune*.
campūs, ī, m., *plain, field*; **Campus**, the Campus Martius, a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.
cānis, cānis, m. and f., *dog*.
cāpio, cāpēre, cēpi, captūm, *take*, CAPTURE.
Cāpitōlium, ī, n. (*caput head*), THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome; the Capitoline hill, including both temple and citadel.
caprā, ae, f., *a she-goat*.
captivūs, ā, ūm (*capio capture*), CAPTIVE; captivūs, ī, m., *a captive, a prisoner*.
cāpūt, cāpitīs, n., *head*. OCCIPUT.
carcēr, carcēris, m., *prison*. INCARCER-ATE.
cāreo, cārēre, cāruī, cārītūm, *be without, lack*.
carpentūm, ī, n., *chariot*.
carrūs, ī, m., CART, *wagon*.
cārūs, ā, ūm, *dear, beloved*.
Cassiūs, ī, m., a Roman name.

castellūm, **ī**, n. (*castrum a fortified place*), CASTLE, fort, stronghold.

Casticūs, **ī**, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castrūm, **ī**, n., fort, castle; pl. camp.

causā, **ae**, f., CAUSE, reason, motive; **causā**, for the sake of, when following a Genitive; **causam dicere**, to plead one's cause.

cāveo, **cāvērē**, **cāvi**, **cautūm**, be on one's guard. CAUTIOUS.

cēlēr, **cēlērīs**, **cēlērē** (cello impel), swift, speedy. CELERITY.

cēlērītēr, **cēlērīūs**, **cēlerrīmō**, adv. (celer swift), swiftly, quickly, immediately.

cēlo, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm**, CONCEAL, hide.

censūs, **ūs**, m. (censeo assess, register), CENSUS.

Centrōnēs, **ūm**, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.

centūm, num. adj. indecl., hundred.

certāmēn, **certāmīnīs**, n. (certo contend), contest; battle.

certūs, **ā**, **ūm** (cerno determine), CERTAIN, sure; **Caesarēm certiōrem facere**, to inform Caesar.

cētēri, **ae**, **ā**, adj. pl., the rest.

cībūs, **ī**, m., food.

cingo, **cingērē**, **cinxi**, **cinctūm**, surround, encircle. CINCTURE.

circitēr, adv. (circus circle), about, near.

circūm, prep. w. acc. (circus circle), around; near, in the environs of. CIRCUM- is a prefix in many English words; e. g. CIRCUM-FERENCE, CIRCUM-NAVIGATE.

circum-do, **dārē**, **dēdī**, **dātūm** (circum around, do put), put around, surround.

circum-vēnio, **vēnirē**, **vēnī**, **ventūm** (circum around, venio come), come around, surround; CIRCUMVENT.

cītērior, **cītēriūs** [see 85], hither.

citrā, prep. w. acc., this side of.

civīs, **civīs**, m. and f., cūizen. CIVIL.

civītās, **ātīs**, f. (civis citizen), a body of cūizens, a state; cūizen-ship.

clārūs, **ā**, **ūm**, CLEAR; famous.

claudio, **claudērē**, **clausī**, **clausūm**, close, enclose, shut; **agmen claudere**, to bring up the rear.

IN-CLUDE, EX-CLUDE.

cliens, **clientīs**, m. and f., (clueus fr. clueo hear), CLIENT, vassal.

clīpeūs or **clīypeūs**, **ī**, m., shield.

cloācā, **ae**, f., drain, sewer; **Cloāca maxīma**, the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tarquinius Priscus.

coepī, **coepissē** [see 127], have begun, began.

cōgīto, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm** (cum denoting completeness, agito weigh in the mind), consider, reflect upon. COGITATE.

- cognōmēn, cognōmīnīs, n.** (*cum* denoting *similarity*, (g)nomen name), a surname.
- co-gnosco, gnoscērē, gnōvī, gnītūm** (*cum* denoting *completeness*, (g)nosco know), know completely; find out, ascertain, learn, discover. COGNITION.
- cōgo, cōgērē, cōgī, coactūm** (*cum* together, ago drive), drive or lead together, collect; compel. COGENT.
- cohors, cohortīs, f., COHORT**, the tenth part of a legion.
- co-hortor, ārī, ātūs sūm** (*cum* intensive, hortor urge), exhort, encourage.
- Collātīnūs, ī, m., cognomen of L. Tarquinius.**
- collis, collīs, m., a hill.**
- col-lōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (*cum* denoting *completeness*, loco place), lay, put, place; nuptum — collocāre, to give in marriage. COLLOCATE, COLLOCATION.
- collōquiūm, ī, n.** (*colloquor* speak together), conference, interview. COLLOQUY.
- col-lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtūs sūm** (*cum* with, loquor speak), speak with, hold a conference.
- collūm, ī, n., neck.**
- cōlo, cōlērē, cōluī, cultūm,** dwell; till, CULTIVATE; honor.
- com-būro, būrērē, bussī, bustūm** (*cum* denoting *completeness*, (b)uro burn), burn up. COMBUSTION.
- comītium, ī, n.** (*cum* together, eo go), the comitium, a place where the Romans assembled to vote.
- commeātūs, ūs, m.** (*commeo* come and go), supplies, provisions.
- com-mēmōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (*cum* intensive, memoro remind of), call to mind; relate. COMMEMORATION.
- com-meo, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (*cum* denoting *frequency*, meo go), come and go, resort; ad Belgas commeāre, to visit the Belgae.
- com-mitto, mittērē, misī, mis-sūm** (*cum* together, mitto cause to go), join; begin; COMMIT. COMMISSION.
- commodē, adv.** (*commodus* advantageous), advantageously, fitly, conveniently; satis commodē, conveniently enough, with sufficient ease.
- commōdūs, ā, ūm** (*cum* denoting *completeness*, modus measure), advantageous, suitable, fit. COMMODIOUS.
- com-mōror, ārī, ātūs sūm** (*cum* denoting *completeness*, moror tarry), stop; reside, stay at; remain.
- com-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mōtūm** (*cum* intensive, moveo move), move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce. COMMOTION.
- com-mūnio, mūnīrē, mūnīvī** and **mūnī, mūnītūm** (*cum*

- denoting completeness, *munio* fortify), fortify on all sides.
- commūnīs, commūnē** (cum together, *munis* serving), COMMON.
- com-pāro, āre, āvi, ātūm** (cum intensive, *paro* prepare), prepare with zeal, make ready.
- com-pērio, pērire, pēri, pertūm, learn, discover.**
- com-plector, plecti, plexūs sūm** (cum with, *plector* entwine one's self), embrace.
- complūrēs, complūrā** (rarely *complūriā*), gen. *complūriūm*, adj. pl. (cum together, *plures* several), several together, very many.
- com-porto, āre, āvi, ātūm** (cum together, *porto* bring), bring together, collect. COMPORT.
- cōnātūm, ī, n.** (*conor* to attempt), an attempt.
- con-cēdo, cēdēre, cessi, cessūm** (cum denoting completeness, *cedo* yield), grant; CONCEDE. CONCESSION.
- concilio, āre, āvi, ātūm** (*concilium* a calling together), bring together; win, CONCILIATE.
- concilium, ī, n.** (cum together, *calo* call), COUNCIL, assembly.
- concordiā, ae, f.** (*concor* fr. cum denoting similarity, *cor* heart), CONCORD, harmony.
- con-curro, currere, cūcurri and curri, cursūm** (cum together, *curro* run), rush together; hasten. CONCURRENT.
- conditio, conditiōnis, f.** (*condo* put together), CONDITION.
- condo, condere, condidi, conditūm** (cum together, *do* put), found, build.
- con-dūco, dūcere, duxi, ductūm** (cum together, *duco* lead), lead together, collect; hire; CONDUCE.
- con-fēro, ferrē, tūli, col-lātūm** (cum together, *fero* bring), bring together, collect; put off; CONFER; **se conferre**, to betake one's self. CONFERENCE, COL-LATE, COLLATION.
- con-ficio, ficere, feci, factūm** (cum denoting completeness, *facio* make), execute, accomplish, finish. CONFECTION.
- con-firmo, āre, āvi, ātūm** (cum denoting completeness, *firmus* firm), establish, strengthen, CONFIRM; encourage; assert. CONFIRMATION.
- con-jicio, jicere, jeci, jectūm** (cum intensive, *jacio* throw), hurl. CONJECTURE.
- conjūratio, conjūratiōnis, f.** (*conjūro* swear together), conspiracy.
- con-jūro, āre, āvi, ātūm** (cum together, *juro* swear), swear together; conspire. CONJURE.
- conjux, conjūgis, m. and f.** (*conjungo* fr. cum together, *jungo* join), spouse, husband, wife.
- cōnor, āri, ātus sūm, attempt, try.** CONATIVE.

consciūs, ā, ūm (*cum with, scio know*), CONSCIOUS.

con-sensūs, ūs, m. (*consentio think together*), *agreement, consent*.

con-sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtūs sūm (*cum denoting completeness, sequor follow*), *follow after, follow; gain; obtain. CONSEQUENT.*

con-sēro, sērērē, sēruī, sertūm (*cum together, sero join*), *join together, join; pugnam conserere, to join battle, to fight.*

Considiūs, ī, m., Publius Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

con-sido, sidērē, sēdi, sessūm (*cum together, sido sit down*), *sit down together, encamp.*

consiliūm, ī, n., deliberation, COUNSEL, plan, design.

con-sisto, sistērē, stīti, stītūm (*cum denoting completeness, sisto place one's self*), *take a stand; keep a position; halt. CONSIST, CONSISTENT.*

con-sōlor, āri, ātūs sūm (*cum intensive, solor comfort*), *comfort greatly, CONSOLE; encourage, cheer.*

conspiciūtūs, ūs, m. (*conspicio look at*), *sight, view, presence.*

con-spicio, spicērē, spexi, spectūm (*cum denoting completeness, specio look*), *behold, see.*

conspīcor, āri, ātūs sūm (*conspicio*), *behold, see.*

constantiā, ae, f. (*constans standing firm*), *firmness, steadfastness, CONSTANCY.*

con-stītuō, stītuērē, stītuī, stī-

tūtūm (*cum denoting completeness, statuo cause to stand*), *resolve, determine; establish, station.*

CONSTITUTE, CONSTITUENT.

consuesco, consuescērē, consuevi, consuetūm, *become accustomed, be wont.*

consul, consulis, m. (*akin to consulo consult*), **CONSUL**; one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually.

con-sūmo, sūmērē, sumpsī, sumptūm (*cum denoting completeness, sumo take*), **CONSUME, waste, destroy. CONSUMPTION, con-temno, temnērē, tempai, temptūm, despise, CONTEMN. CONTEMPT.**

con-tendo, tendērē, tendī, tentūm (*cum denoting completeness, tendo stretch*), *hasten, march in haste; contend, dispute, fight; w. inf. proceed, set out eagerly.*

contentio, contentiōnis, f. (*contendo contend*), **CONTENTION, strife.**

con-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (*cum together, teneo hold*), *hold together; encompass, hem in, bound; occupy, restrain. CONTENT, CONTINENT.*

continentēr, adv. (*continens hanging together*), *continually, without cessation.*

con-tingo, tingērē, tīgī, tactūm (*cum denoting completeness, tango touch*), *touch on all sides; touch, border upon. CONTACT.*

contrā, prep. w. acc., against.

contūmēliā, ae, f. (*cum intensive, tumeo swell*), *insult, abuse; disgrace*. CONTUMELY.

con-vālesco, vālescērē, vālui (*cum denoting completeness, valesco grow strong*), *regain health, recover*. CONVALESCENT.

con-vēnio, vēnirē, vēni, ventūm (*cum together, venio come*), *come together, assemble*; CON-
VENE. CONVENTION.

conventūs, ūs, m. (*convenio come together*), *court*; **conventum agere**, *to hold a court*.

con-vertō, vertērē, verti, versūm (*cum denoting completeness, verto turn*), *turn about, change*; *in fugam convertēre*, *to put to flight*. CONVERT, CON-
VERSION.

con-vōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm (*cum together, voco call*), *call together, summon*, CONVOKE. CONVOCA-
TION.

cōpiā, ae, f. (*cum denoting completeness, ops means of any kind*), *plenty, abundance, supply*; *num-
ber*; pl., *forces, troops*; *riches*.

cōpiōsūs, ā, ūm (*copia plenty, osus full of*), *wealthy, well-sup-
plied*; COPIOUS.

cōrām, prep. w. abl., *in the pres-
ence of*; *before*: adv., *openly*.

Cōrīnthūs, ī, f., *Corinth, a city in
Greece*.

corpūs, corpōriā, n., *body*;
CORPSE.

cornū, ūs, n., *horn*; *wing, flank
of an army*.

cor-rōdo, rōdērē, rōsi, rōsūm (*cum denoting completeness, ro-
do gnaw*), *gnaw to pieces, gnaw*;
CORRODE.

Crassus, M. Licinius Crassus, a
celebrated Roman.

crēmo, ārē, āvi, ātūm, *burn*.
CREMATION.

creo, ārē, āvi, ātūm, CREATE,
elect, choose, appoint. CREA-
TION.

crūs, crūrīs, n., *leg*.

cultūs, ūs, m. (*colo cultivate*),
CULTURE.

cūm, prep. w. abl., *with, together with*.

cūpīdītās, ātis, f. (*cupīdus de-
sirous*), *desire, wish, longing*;
eagerness, enthusiasm; CUPID-
ITY.

cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, (*cupio desire*),
desirous, fond.

cūpio, cūpērē, cūpīvi and cūpii,
cupitūm, desire.

cūr, interrog. adv., *why? where-
fore?*

cūrā, ae, f. (*quaero seek*), *care*.

Cūrēs, Cūrīum, f. pl., *chief town
of the Sabines*.

cūrīā, ae, f., *curia or ward*; *senate-
house*.

Curiātīi, ōrūm, m. pl., *the name
of an Alban tribe. Three broth-
ers belonging to this tribe fought
with the Horatii*.

cūro, ārē, āvi, ātūm (*cura care*),
*care for, attend to, cause some-
thing to be done*. CURATE.

custōs, custōdiā, m. and f., *guard,
watch*. CUSTODIAN.

D.

damno, ārē, āvi, atum (*damnum penalty*), CONDEMN.
dē, prep. w. abl., down from, from;
of; about, concerning; for.
dēā, ae, f. [see 11], *goddess.*
dēbeo, ērē, uī, itum (*de from, habeo have*), *owe.*
dē-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessum
(de away, cedo go), go away, depart, retire.
dē-certo, ārē, āvi, ātum (*de intensive, certo contend*), *fight, contend.*
dēcīmūs, ā, ūm (*decem ten*), *tenth.*
dē-cīpio, cīpērē, cēpi, ceptum
(de intensive, capio ensnare),
 DECEIVE. DECEPTION.
declāro, ārē, āvi, ātum, show,
 DECLARE.
dē-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductum
(de down, away, duco lead),
lead down or away, withdraw,
lead. DEDUCE, DEDUCT, etc.
dē-fātigo, ārē, āvi, ātum (*de*
denoting completeness, fatigo
weary), weary completely, fatigue.
dē-fendo, fendērē, fendī, fen-
sūm, DEFEND.
dēformītās, ātis, f., DEFORMITY,
ugliness.
deinde, adv., then, after that.
dē-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectum
(de down, jacio throw), throw or
cast down. DEJECTION.
dēlectūs, ā, ūm (*deligo choose*),
chosen.

dēleo, delērē, dēlēvi, dēlētum
destroy. DELETERIOUS.
dē-lībēro, ārē, āvi, ātum (*de*
denoting completeness, libro
weigh in one's mind), weigh well
in mind, DELIBERATE. DELIB-
ERATION.
dē-ligo, ligērē, lēgi, lectum (*de*
apart, lego gather), *select, choose.*
Dēmārātūs, ī, m., a *Corinthian,*
father of Tarquinius Priscus.
dē-mitto, mittērē, misi, mis-
sūm (*de down, mitto let go*),
let go down; capite demisso,
with bowed head.
dē-monstro, ārē, āvi, ātum (*de*
intensive, monstro show), *point*
out, show, DEMONSTRATE; de-
clare. DEMONSTRATION.
dēnī, ae, ā, num. adj. pl., ten each.
dēnīquē, adv., at last, finally.
dens, dentis, m., tooth. DENTAL.
dē-pōno, pōnērē, pōsui, pōsi-
tum (*de down, pono put*), *put*
down, lay aside, get rid of. DE-
POSIT, DEPONENT.
de-scendo, scendērē, scendi,
scensum (*de down, scando go*),
 DESCEND.
de-scribo, scribērē, scripsī,
scriptum, DESCRIBE; divide.
 DESCRIPTION.
dē-signo, ārē, āvi, ātum (*de*
intensive, signo mark), *DESIG-*
NATE, describe, mean.
de-spēro, ārē, āvi, ātum (*de*
denoting negation, spero hope)
despair. DESPERATION.
de-stituo, stituerē, stitui, stitū-

tūm (de *away*, statuo *put*), forsake, abandon. DESTITUTE, DESTITUTION.

dē-sūm, de-essē, dē-fui (de *away*, sum *be*), be wanting.

dētēriōr, dētēriūs [see 85], worse.

dētrimentūm, ī, n. (detero fr. de *away*, tero *rub*), loss; damage, injury; DETRIMENT. DETRIMENTAL.

deūs, ī, m. [see 20], god; DEITY.

dē-veho, vehērē, vexī, vectūm (de *away*, veho *carry*), carry away, bring.

dē-vōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (de *down*, voro *swallow*), DEVOUR, eat up.

dextēr, dextrā, dextrūm, right; dextrā (sc. manu *hand*), on the right. DEXTEROUS.

dico, dicērē, dixī, dictūm, say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name; causam dicere, to plead one's cause. DICTUM.

diēs, diēī, m., day.

dif-fēro, dif-ferrē, dis-tūlī, dilātūm (dis *in different directions*, fero *carry*), carry different ways; put off; DIFFER.

difficilis, ē (dis *negative*, facilis *easy*), DIFFICULT; impracticable.

dignitās, ātis, f. (dignus *worthy*), DIGNITY, rank; honor, office.

dignūs, ā, ūm, *worthy*. DIGNIFY.

di-mitto, mittērē, misi, missūm (dis *hither and thither*, mitto *send*), DISMISS.

dī-ruo, ruērē, ruī, rūtūm (dis *asunder*, ruo *hurl down*), destroy; overthrow; raze.

dis, m. and f.; ditē, n.; gen. dītīs [dītīōr, dītissimūs], rich.

dis-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (dis *away*, cedo *go*), go away, depart, leave.

dissīdiūm, ī, n. (dissideo fr. dis *apart*, sedeo *sit*), dissension.

dis-trībuo, trībuērē, trībui, trībūtūm (dis *among several*, tribuo *give*), DISTRIBUTE, divide.

dītio, dītīōnis, f., dominion, power.

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., a long time.

dīvēs, gen. dīvītīs, adj., rich.

Dīvīco, ōnis, m., a distinguished man among the Helvetii.

dī-vīdo, vīdērē, vīdī, visūm (dis *asunder*, root *vid* *separate*), DIVIDE; separate. DIVISION.

Dīvitiācūs, ī, m., a chief of the Aedui.

dīvītiae, ārūm, f. pl. (dives *rich*), riches, wealth.

do, dārē, dēdī, dātūm, give.

dōceo, dōcērē, dōcui, doctūm teach, instruct; inform. DOCTOR.

dōlōr, dōlōris, m. (doleo *feel pain*), grief, sorrow, trouble. DOLOROUS.

dōlūs, ī, m., fraud, deceit, stratagem.

dōmo, ārē, dōmui, dōmītūm, subdue, conquer.

dōmūs, ūs and ī [see 97], house; dōmī, at home; dōmūm, home,

homeward; dōmō, from home.

DOME.

dūbītātio, dōis, f. (*dubito waver in opinion*), *doubt, hesitation.*

dūbiūs, ā, ūm, doubtful. DUBIOUS.

dūcentī, ae, ā, num. adj. pl. (*duo two, centum hundred*), *two hundred.*

dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm, *lead, draw; suppose, consider; put off.* DUCT, AQUEDUCT.

dulcis, dulcē, sweet, pleasant. DULCET.

dum, conj., while, as long as; until.

Dumnōrix, Dumnōrigis, m., *one of the Aedui.*

duō, ae, ō, num. adj. [see 108], *two.*

dux, dūcis, m. and f., leader, guide; commander, general.

E.

ēdūco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*edūco bring up a child*), EDUCATE. EDUCATION.

ē-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm (*ex out, duco lead*), *lead out, lead forth.* EDUCE, EDUCATION.

effēmīno, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*ex denoting change of nature, femina woman*), *enervate.* EFFEMINATE.

ef-ficio, ficērē, fēcī, fectūm (*ex out, facio make*), EFFECT, accomplish.

ef-fundo, fundērē, fūdī, fūsūm

(*ex out, fundo pour*), *pour out, overflow.* EFFUSION.

Egēriā, ae, f., *a nymph, celebrated in Roman mythology as the wife and instructress of Numa.*

ēgō, pers. pron. [see 112], *I.*

ē-grēdior, grēdī, gressūs sūm (*ex out, gradior go*), *go out, depart.* EGRESS.

ē-lābor, lābī, lapsūs sūm (*ex out, labor slip*), *glide away, escape.* ELAPSE.

ē-mīneo, mīnērē, mīnuī (*ex out, mineo jut*), *rise above; appear.*

EMINENT.

ēmo, ēmērē, ēmī, emptūm, buy, purchase.

ē-nuncio, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*ex out of a place, nuncio carry a report*), *divulge, report.*

eō, irē, ivī, Itūm [see 126], *go.*

eō, adv., to that place, thither, there; eō — quō, the — the.

ēquēs, ēquītis, m. (*equus horse, eo go*), *rider, horseman; cavalryman; pl., cavalry.*

ēquestēr, trīs, trē (*equus horseman*), *of horsemen, of cavalry.* EQUESTRIAN.

ēquītātis, ūs, m. (*equito to be a horseman*), *cavalry.*

ēquūs, ī, m., horse.

ē-rīpio, rīpērē, rīpuī, reptūm (*ex out, rapio tear*), *tear out or from, take from.*

ēt, conj., and, even; ēt — ēt, both — and.

ētiām, conj. (*et-jam*), *and also, also, even.*

et-si, conj., *even if, although*.

Etruriā, ae.f., a country of Italy, modern Tuscany.

ē-vertō, **vertērē**, **vertī**, **versūm** (ex out, **vertō** turn), *turn out; overturn, destroy*.

ē-volo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex out, volo fly), *fly out, fly away*.

ex, **ē**, prep. w. abl. [see LN. IV., Vy., 1], *out of, from among; from: of*.

exemplūm, **i**, n. (**exīmo** fr. ex out, **emo** take), **EXAMPLE**.

ex-eo, **irē**, **ii**, **itūm** (ex out, eo go), *go out, go forth, depart; pass., be gone*.

exercitatio, **ōnis**, f. (**exercito** to exercise), *practice*.

exercitus, **ūs**, m. (**exerceo** exercise), *army*. See **agmen**.

ex-igo, **igērē**, **ēgi**, **actūm** (ex out, **ago** drive), *drive out, lead out, spend; aestas exacta est, the summer is gone. EXACTION.*

existimo, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *think, suppose; believe, imagine*.

exitium, **i**, n. (**exeo** go out), *destruction, ruin*.

ex-oro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex effectually, **oro** entreat), *move by entreaty; obtain by entreaty*.

expeditus, **ā**, **ūm** (**expedio** fr. ex away from, **pes** foot), *unincumbered, passable. EXPEDITIOUS*.

ex-plico, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex out, **plico** fold), *unfold, explain, spread. EXPLICATION*.

explorator, **ōris**, m. (**exploro** explore), *spy, scout*.

ex-pugno, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex effectually, **pugno** fight), *take by assault; storm, capture*.

ex-specto, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ex very much, **specto** look for), **EXPECT**, *long for; wait. EXPECTATION*.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, beyond*.

ex-trāho, **trāhērē**, **traxī**, **tractūm** (ex out, **traho** draw), *draw out, EXTRACT. EXTRACTION*.

extrēmūs, **ā**, **ūm** [see 85], *furthest, most distant, EXTREME*.

ex-ūro, **ūrērē**, **ussī**, **ustūm** (ex entirely, **uro** burn), *burn up*.

F.

fābulā, ae, f. (**fari** to speak), *story, FABLE*.

fācilē, **fāciliūs**, **fācillimē**, adv. (**facilis** easy), *easily, readily, without difficulty*.

fācīlis, **fācilē** (**facio** do, **ilis** denoting capability), *easy, practicable. FACILE*.

facio, **fācērē**, **fēcī**, **factūm**, *do, make; incite, furnish; iter facere, to march, to journey*.

factio, **factiōnis**, f. (**facio** take part with one), **FACTION**, *political party*.

factūm, **i**, n. (**facio** do), *deed, act. facultās, **ātis**, f. (**facilis** which see), *ability, opportunity. FACULTY*.*

fāmilīā, ae, f. (*famulus servant*), household, FAMILY.

fāmilīārītās, ātis, f. (*familiāris intimate*), intimacy, friendship, FAMILIARITY.

fāmūlā, ae, f., maid, maid-servant.

fauce, abl., f. sing., throat; **fauces**, **fauciūm**, f. pl., throat.

Faustūlūs, ī, m., the shepherd by whom Romulus and Remus were brought up.

fāveo, **fāvērē**, **fāvi**, **fautūm**, favor, show favor.

fēlēs and **fēlīs**, **fēlīs**, f., cat. FELINE.

fēlicitēr, adv. (*felix happy*), happily, successfully.

fēlix, gen. **fēlicīs**, adj. (*feo produce*), happy, fortunate. FELITICIOUS.

fēmīnā, ae, f., female, woman. FEMININE.

fērē, adv., almost, nearly.

fēro, **ferrē**, **tūli**, **lātūm**, bear, bring, carry; endure.

fērūs, ā, ūm, wild, uncultivated; **fērā**, ae, f., wild beast.

ferrūm, ī, n., iron; sword.

festūm, ī, n., FEAST.

fīdēs, **fīdēi**, f. (*fido trust*), faith, confidence; pledge, promise; protection. FIDELITY.

filiā, ae, f. [see 11], daughter.

filiūs, ī, m., son.

finio, **finīrē**, **finīvi**, **finītūm** (*finis end*), end, FINISH.

finīs, **finīs**, m., end, limit, boundary; pl., territory. FINAL.

finītīmūs, ā, ūm (*finis boundary*), neighboring; **finītīmī**, ōrūm, m. pl., neighbors.

fio, **fiērī**, **factūs sūm** [see 126], be made; become; occur, happen.

firmītēr, adv. (*firmus firm*), firmly, securely.

flāgīto, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, demand.

flammā, ae, f., FLAME.

fleo, **flērē**, **flēvi**, **flētūm**, weep.

flens, gen. **flentīs**, weeping.

flōs, **flōrīs**, m., flower. FLORAL.

flūmēn, **flūmīnīs**, n. (*fluo flow*), river.

fluo, **fluērē**, **fluxī**, **fluxūm**, flow.

FLUENT, FLUENCY.

fōdio, **fōdērē**, **fossī**, **fossūm**, dig. FOSSIL.

foedūs, **foedērīs**, n., league, treaty. FEDERAL.

formīdo, **formīdīnīs**, f., fear, terror.

formōsītās, ātis, f., beauty.

fortassē, adv. (*fors chance*), perhaps.

fortē, adv. (*fors chance*), accidentally, by chance.

fortīs, **fortē**, brave, bold, courageous, valiant; strong.

fortītēr, **fortiūs**, **fortissīmē**, adv. (*fortis brave*), bravely, valiantly.

fortūnā, ae, f., FORTUNE.

fōrūm, ī, n., market-place; FORUM; court of justice.

fossā, ae, f. (*fodio dig*), ditch, trench.

frātēr, **frātrīs**, m., brother. FRATERNAL.

frīgūs, frīgōrīs, n., *cold, frost*.
frūmentāriūs, ā, ūm (*frumentum corn*), *of corn*; **res frumentaria**, *supplies*.
frūmentūm, ī, n., *corn, grain*.
fruor, frui, fructūs sūm, *enjoy* [see 104].
fūgā, ae, f., *flight*.
fūgio, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgītūm, *flee*; *escape*. FUGITIVE.
fulmēn, fulmīnīs, n. (*fulgeo flash*), *thunder-bolt, lightning*. FULMINE.
fūnūs, fūnērīs, n., *funeral procession, burial*, FUNERAL.

G.

Gābiniūs, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius*, a Roman consul.
Galliā, ae, f., *Gaul*; it embraced modern France, Belgium, that part of the Netherlands south of the Rhine, the provinces of Germany west of the Rhine, and a large part of Switzerland; all this was known as **Gallia ulterior**, *farther Gaul*, and as **Gallia transalpina**, *Gaul across the Alps*, i. e. from Rome: the northern part of modern Italy was known as **Gallia citerior**, *hither Gaul*, and as **Gallia cisalpina**, *Gaul this side the Alps*, i. e. towards Rome.
gallinā, ae, f., *hen*.
Gallūs, ī, m., *a Gaul*.

Garumnā, ae, f., *a river of Gaul, the Garonne*.
gēmīnūs, ā, ūm, *double*; **gēmīni filii**, *twin-sons*.
gēnēr, gēnērī, m., *son-in-law*.
Gēnēvā, ae, f., *a town of the Allobroges, on Lake Lemannus, modern GENEVA*.
gens, gentīs, f. (*gigno beget*), *nation, tribe*. GENTILE.
gēnūs, gēnērīs, n., *birth, kind, race*.
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *THE GERMANS*.
gēro, gērērē, gessi, gestūm, *bear, carry*; *carry on, wage*; *pass. happen, take place*.
gigno, gignērē, gēnuī, gēnītūm, *beget*; *bear*; *pass., be born*.
glōriā, ae, f., *GLORY, renown*.
glōrior, āri, ātūs sūm (*gloria glory*), *boast*, GLORY.
grādūs, ūs, m. (*gradior to step*), *step, stair*. GRADE.
Graecūs, ā, ūm, *GRECIAN, GREEK*.
grātiā, ae, f. (*gratus beloved, dear*), *favor*; *influence, popularity*; GRACE; pl., *thanks*.
grātūlor, āri, ātūs sūm, *CONGRATULATE*.
grāvīs, grāvē, *heavy, burdensome*; GRIEVOUS, *painful, severe*. GRIEF.
grāvītēr, grāviūs, grāvissimē, *adv. (gravis heavy), heavily*; *grievously, severely*.
grūs, gruis, m. and f., *crane (a bird)*.

H.

hābeo, ērē, uī, Itūm, HAVE, hold;
regard, consider; deliver.

Harūdēs, ūm, m. pl., a people of
Southern Germany.

hastā, ae, f., spear, lance.

haud, adv., not at all, by no
means.

haedūs and hoedūs, ī, m., kid, a
young goat.

Helvētīl, ōrūm, m. pl., an an-
cient people occupying a large
part of the country now called
Switzerland.

Helvētiūs, ā, ūm, of the Helvetii.

herbīdūs, ā, ūm (herba grass),
grassy.

hibernā, ōrūm, n. pl. (hiems
winter), winter-quarters; [prop-
erly an adjective with *castra*
understood.] **HIBERNATE.**

hic, haec, hoc, this; pl., these
[see 113].

hic, adv. (hic this), here, in this
place.

hiēmo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (hiems
winter), pass the winter.

hinc, adv. (hic this), hence, from
this place.

Hispaniā, ae, f., SPAIN.

hōdiē, adv. (contracted fr. hoc
and *die, on this day), to-day.*

hōmō, hōmīnīs, m. and f., human
being, person, man. [See LN.
XXV., NOTE 1.]

hōnōr, hōnōrīs, m., HONOR.

hōrā, ae, f., HOUR.

Horātīl, ōrum, m. pl., three Ro-

man brothers who fought against
the Curiatii.

hortor, āri, ātūs sūm, EXHORT,
urge. **HORTATORY.**

hospitiūm, ī, n. (hospes guest),
HOSPITALITY. HOSPITAL, HOS-
PITABLE.

hostīs, hostīs, m. and f., enemy,
public enemy; [inimicus is a
personal enemy.] **HOSTILE.**

hūc, adv. (hic this), hither, to this
place.

hūmānitās, ātīs, f. (humanus of
or belonging to man), HUMANI-
TY, refinement, culture.

I.

ibī, adv. (is), there, in that place;
then.

ico, icōrē, icoī, ictūm, strike;
foedus icōre, to ratify or make
a treaty. **ICTUS.**

idem, eādem, idem (is and dem.
suffix dem), the same [see 113].

idōneūs, ā, ūm, fit, suitable.

igītūr, conj., therefore.

ignīs, īs, m., fire.

illē, illā, illū, that, he; pl., those.

immēritūs, ā, ūm (in negative,
meritus deserving), not deserv-
ing; not deserved.

immortālīs, immortalē (in neg-
ative, mortālis mortal), IMMOR-
TAL.

immortālītās, ātīs, f. (immortā-
lis immortal), IMMORTALITY.

impēdimentū, ī, n. (impedio
fr. in in the way of, pedes feet),

- hindrance*; pl., *baggage* of an army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [*sarcinae* are packs carried by the soldiers.] **IMPEDIMENT.**
- im-pendeo, pendere**, no perf. nor sup. (in *over, pendeo hang*), *overhang*; **IMPEND.**
- impērātōr, ōrīs, m.** (*impero command*), *commander-in-chief, general.*
- impērītūs, ā, ūm** (in *negative, peritus skilled*), *unskilled, inexperienced.*
- impēriūm, ī, n.** (*impero command*), *command; government; EMPIRE, supreme power.*
- impēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in *upon, paro put*), *give orders, order; command; rule.*
- impētūs, ūs, m.,** *attack, assault.* **IMPETUS.**
- im-plōro, ārē, āvī, ātūm**, *beseech, entreat, IMPLORE.*
- im-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm** (in *upon, pono place*), *place upon; levy upon. IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.*
- im-porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in *into, porto bring*), *bring into, IMPORT.*
- In**, prep. w. acc and abl.; w. acc., *into, to, towards, against; w. abl., in, on, upon, among.*
- inānīs, inānē**, *empty; vain, ineffectual.*
- incendo, incendērē, incendi, incensūm**, *set on fire, burn. INCENDIARY.*
- inchoo, ārē, āvī, ātūm**, *begin.*
- in-cīdo, cīdērē, cīdī** (in *into, cado fall*), *fall into or upon; chance to meet with. INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.*
- in-cīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in *without additional force, cito put in quick motion*), *instigate, encourage; INCITE.*
- in-cōlo, cōlērē, cōluī, cultūm** (in *in, colo dwell*), *inhabit, dwell.*
- incolūmīs, ē**, *unhurt, safe.*
- incommōdūm, ī**, (*incommōdus fr. in negative, commōdus convenient*), *inconvenience, misfortune, defeat.*
- incrēdībīlis, ē** (in *negative, credo believe, bilis denoting capability*), **INCREDIBLE**; *extraordinary.*
- incursio, ōnīs, f.** (*incurro fr. in into, against; curro run*), *attack; INCURSION.*
- in-cūso, ārē, āvī, ātūm** (in *against, causa cause*), *censure, blame.*
- in-dīco, dīcērē, dixī, dictūm** (in *among, dico speak*), *declare, proclaim.*
- indignūs, ā, ūm** (in *negative, dignus worthy*), *unworthy.*
- indōlēs, īs, f.**, *disposition, nature.*
- in-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm** (in *into, duco lead*), *lead into; INDUCE.*
- indulgeo, indulgērē, indulsi, indultūm**, *favor, show favor; INDULGE.*

in-duo, duĕrĕ, duĭ, dūtūm, put
on, dress; clothe.

inermis, ĕ (in negative, arma
arms), unarmed; defenceless.

inferiōr, inferiūs, lower. INFE-
RIOR [see 85].

in-fĕro, in-ferrĕ, in-tūlĭ, il-
lātūm (in into, upon, fero
bring), bring into or upon, make
upon. INFER, INFERENCE.

in-fluo, fluĕrĕ, fluxĭ, fluxūm (in
into, fluo flow), flow into, empty.
INFLUENCE, INFLUX.

in-frendeo, frendĕrĕ, gnash with
the teeth.

ingens, gen. ingentis, vast, enor-
mous, large.

in-haereo, haerĕrĕ, haesi, hae-
sūm (in to, in; haereo stick),
stick or cleave to or in.

in-hio, ħrĕ, ħvi, ħtūm (in for,
hio gape), gape for, desire.

inimicus, ħ, ūm (in negative,
amicus friendly), unfriendly,
hostile; INIMICAL. See *hostis*.

inĭtium, ĭ, n. (ineo fr. in upon,
eo enter), beginning. INITIAL.

in-jicio, jicĕrĕ, jĕci, jectūm (in
into, jacio throw), throw into;
inspire, infuse. INJECT.

injūriā, ae, f. (injurius fr. in
negative, jus right), INJURY,
wrong; injustice, damage; in-
sult.

in-nascor, nascĭ, natūs sūm (in
in, nascor be born), spring up in.

inōpiā, ae, f. (inōpes fr. in neg-
ative, opes resources), want,
scarcity.

inquam and inquo, defective
verb, say.

insidiae, ħrūm, f. pl., treachery,
deceit. INSIDIOUS.

insignis, insignĕ (in upon, sig-
num mark), remarkable, extraor-
dinary; **insignĕ, is, n., sign.**

in-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuĭ, stĭ-
tūtūm, appoint, INSTITUTE;
train up, instruct.

institūtūm, ĭ, n., custom; INSTI-
TUTION.

in-struo, struĕrĕ, struxĭ, struo-
tūm (in without additional
force, struo arrange), arrange,
form, draw up. INSTRUCT, IN-
STRUCTIVE, INSTRUCTION.

intel-lĭgo (lēgo), lĭgĕrĕ, lĕgĭ,
lectūm (inter between, lego
choose), understand, know. IN-
TELLIGENT.

intĕr, prep. w. acc., between,
among.

inter-cĕdo, cĕdĕrĕ, cessĭ, ces-
sūm (inter between, cedo go),
intervene. INTERCEDE, INTER-
CESSION.

inter-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cĕpĭ, cep-
tūm (inter between, capio take),
usurp: take away fraudulently;
INTERCEPT.

inter-ficio, ficĕrĕ, fĕci, fectūm
(inter between, facio make), kill,
slay.

inter-ĭmo, ĭmĕrĕ, ĭmĭ, emptūm,
kill, put to death.

internĕcio, ōnis, f. (internĕco
fr. inter completely, neco kill),
slaughter.

interregnum, **I**, **n.** (*inter between, regnum reign*), **INTERREGNUM**.

inter-sūm, **essē**, **fuī** (*inter between, sum be*), *be between, intervene*.

intervallūm, **I**, **n.** (*inter between, vallum rampart*), **INTERVAL**, *distance*.

intro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *enter*.

in-tueor, **tuērī**, **tuītūs sūm** (*in upon, at; tueor look*), *look at or upon*.

intūs, **adv.**, *within*.

invidiā, **ae**, **f.** (*invideo look askance at*), **ENVY**, *hatred*.

invītūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *unwilling; sē in-vīto*, *against his will*.

ipsē, **ipsā**, **ipsūm** [see 113], *self; himself, herself, itself; very; ipse rex*, *the very king*.

irrētio, **irē**, **ivī**, **itūm** (*in in, rete net*), *entangle, ensnare*.

ir-rīdeo, **rīdērē**, **rīsī**, **rīsūm** (*in at, rideo laugh*), *laugh at, deride*.

irrito, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *provoke, incite*, **IRRITATE**. **IRRITATION**.

is, **eā**, **īd**, *he, her, it; this; that* [see 113].

Isocrātēs, **īs**, **m.**, *a celebrated Greek orator and rhetorician*.

itā, **adv.** (**is**), *so, thus, in this manner, as follows*.

Itāliā, **ae**, **f.**, **ITALY**.

Itālūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *Italian*.

itā-quē, **conj.**, *and so, accordingly, therefore*.

itēm, **adv.** (**is**), *in like manner, likewise*.

itēr, **itīnērīs**, **n.** (**eo go**), *journey;*

march; way, road, route; iter facēre, *to march*. **ITINERANT**. **itērūm**, **adv.** (**is**), *again, a second time*.

J.

jāceo, **ērē**, **uī**, **jācītūm**, *lie*.

jācio, **jācērē**, **jēcī**, **jactūm**, *throw, hurl, cast*.

jām, **adv.**, *now, already*.

Jāniculūm, **I**, **n.**, *a hill across the Tiber from Rome*.

jūbeo, **jūbērē**, **jussī**, **jussūm**, *command, order*.

jūdicīūm, **I**, **n.**, (*judex judge*), *judgment; trial; sentence; decision*. **JUDICIAL**.

jūdico, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*jus law, dico point out*), **JUDGE**; *determine, conclude; think*. **ADJUDICATE**.

jūgūm, **I**, **n.** (*jungo join*), *yoke; ridge, summit*: *in war a frame made of two upright spears supporting a third in a horizontal position, under which a conquered army was made to pass in token of subjection*.

jūmentūm, **I**, **n.**, *beast of burden as a horse or an ox*.

Juppiter and **Jūpiter**, **Jōvis**, **m.**, *son of Saturn, father of gods and king of men*.

Jūrā, **ae**, **m.**, *the Jura*, *a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and forming the western boundary of Switzerland*.

jūs, jūris, n., right, law. JURIST.
jūs-jūrandūm, jūris-jūrandī, n.,
oath [see 110].
jussū, m. abl. (jubeo command),
by command.
justūs, ā, ūm (jus law, suffix tus
denoting fulness), JUST, right.
jūvo, jūvārē, jūvī, jūtūm, help,
aid, assist. AD-JUTANT.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Roman praenomen.
Lābiēnūs, ī, m., one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war.
lābōr, lābōris, m., LABOR, toil.
lacrimā, ae, f., tear.
lācūs, ūs, m., LAKE.
laetor, ārī, ātūs sūm (laetus
joyful), rejoice, exult.
laetūs, ā, ūm, joyful.
lānio, ārē, āvī, ātūm, tear in
pieces.
lāpis, lāpīdīs, m., stone. LAPID-
ARY.
lāqueūs, ī, m., noose, snare.
Lārentiā, ae, f. See Acca.
largitio, ōnīs, f. (largior give
bountifully), liberality.
lātē, adv. (latus broad), widely,
extensively.
Lātinūs, ī, m., an ancient king of the Laurentes, a people of Italy.
latro, latrōnīs, m., robber.
latro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, bark, bark
at.
lātūs, lātēris, n., side; flank.
LATERAL.

lātūs, ā, ūm, broad, wide; large,
spacious. LAT-ITUDE.
Lāvīniā, ae, f., daughter of Latinus and second wife of Aenēas.
Lāvīniūm, ī, n., a city in Italy built by Aenēas.
lēgātio, ōnīs, f. (lego send on
an embassy), embassy. LEGA-
TION.
lēgātūs, ī, m. (lego send as a rep-
resentative), ambassador, envoy,
LEGATE; lieutenant.
lēgio, lēgiōnīs, f. (lego levy),
LEGION, a body of infantry varying in number from 4000 to 6000, and generally accompanied by about 300 cavalrymen.
lēgo, lēgērē, lēgī, lectūm,
choose.
Lēmānūs, ī, m., Lake Lemān or
 Geneva in the southern part of Switzerland.
leo, leōnīs, m., LION.
lētālīs, ē (letum death; suffix
alis, belonging to), fatal, deadly.
lēvītās, ātīs, f. (lēvis smooth),
smoothness.
lēvītās, ātīs, f. (lēvis light),
lightness. LEVITY.
lex, lēgīs, f., law. LEGAL.
libēr, libērā, libērūm, free.
libērālītās, ātīs, f. (liberālis fr.
liber free), LIBERALITY, gen-
erosity.
libērē, libēriūs, adv. (liber free),
freely, unreservedly.
libērī, ōrūm, m. pl., children.
libēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (liber
free), to free, LIBERATE.

liceor, liceři, licētūs sūm, bid
at an auction.

licēt, licērē, licuīt or licītūm
est, it is permitted, allowed; one
may [see 128 and LN. LXIX.,
Examples 2 - 5].

licēt, although.

Lingōnēs, ūm, m. pl, a people
in Northeastern Gaul.

linguā, ae, f., tongue; LANGUAGE.
LINGUIST, LINGUAL.

Liscūs, i, m., a magistrate among
the Aeduī.

littērā and lītērā, ae, f. (lino
besmear), LETTER of the alpha-
bet; pl., letter, epistle. LITERA-
TURE.

lōcūs, i, m. [pl. loci and loca],
place. LOCAL, LOCALITY.

longē, longiūs, longissimē, adv.
(longus long), far, by far; often
used to strengthen superla-
tives.

longissimē, adv., very far.

longitūdo, inīs, f. (longus long),
length. LONGITUDE.

longūs, ā, ūm, long.

lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtūs sūm,
speak, talk. LOQUACIOUS.

Lūcius, i, m., a Roman prae-
nomen.

Lūcrētīā, ae, f., a Roman matron,
wife of Collatinus.

lūdūs, i, m., play, game.

lūpā, ae, f., she-wolf.

lūpūs, i, m., wolf.

lūstro, ārē, āvī, ātūm, review.

lux, lūcis, f. (luceo shine), light.

lūrā, ae, f., lyre.

M.

M., abbreviation of Marcus, a
Roman praenomen.

M., abbreviation of Manius, a
Roman praenomen.

māgis, maxīmē, adv., more, rather.

māgistrātūs, ūs, m. (magister
fr. mag-, root of **magnus,**
signifying **to be great), magis-**
trate.

magnitūdo, inīs, f. (magnus
great), size, MAGNITUDE.

magnūs, ā, ūm, great, large, big,
mighty. MAGNI-

mājestās ātis, f., MAJESTY,
dignity.

mājōr, mājūs, gen. mājōris
(comp. of magnus), larger,
greater, bigger; mājōrēs, ūm,
m. pl., ancestors. MAJOR.

mālē, pējūs, pessimē, adv., bad-
ly, ill, wickedly.

mālē-dīco, dīcērē, dīxi, dictūm
(male ill, dico speak), speak ill
of, revile, rail at; [with dat.]
MALEDICTION.

mālēficiūm, i, n. [maleficus do-
ing evil], mischief, damage.

mālēficiūs, ā, ūm (male wicked-
ly, facio do), wicked; mālēfi-
cūs, i, m., an evil-doer.

mālo, mallē, mālui (magis more,
volo be willing), be more willing,
choose rather, prefer [see 125].

mālūs, ā, ūm, bad, wicked, evil,
destructive.

māneo, mănērē, mansī, man-
sūm, stay, RE-MAIN.

mandātūm, *i*, *n*. (*mando* fr. *manus* *hand*, *do* *put*; *put* in *one's hand*), *charge*, *order*, *command*.

MANDATE.

mānūs, *ūs*, *f*., *hand*; *force* of soldiers. **MANUFACTURE**.

Maniūs, *i*, *m*. See **M'**.

Marciūs, *i*, *m*., a Roman name.

Marcūs, *i*, *m*. See **M**.

mārē, *māris*, *n*., *sea*.

mārītūs, *i*, *m*. (*marīta* *wife*), *belonging* to a wife, *husband*.

Mars, **Martīs**, *m*., son of Jupiter and Juno, and god of war.

MARTIAL.

massā, *ae*, *f*., *MASS*, *lump*.

mātēr, *mātrīs*, *f*., *MOTHER*; *matron*.

mātrīmōnium, *i*, *n*. (*mater* *mother*), *marriage*; *in* *matrimonium* *dare*, *to give* in *marriage*; *in* *matrimonium* *ducere*, *to marry*. **MATRIMONY**.

Matrōna, *ae*, *m*., a river in Gaul, the modern *Marne*.

mātūrē, *adv*. (*matūrus* *ripe*), *early*, *soon*.

mātūro, *ārē*, *āvī*. *ātūm*, *hasten*, *make* *haste*.

mātūrūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *ripe*, **MATURE**.

mediocrītēr, *adv*. (*mediocris* fr. *medius* denoting a *middle state*), *moderately*; *non* *mediocrīter*, *exceedingly*.

mediūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *in the middle* or *midst*; *in the middle of*; *middle*, *central*.

mēl, *mellīs*, *n*., *honey*. **MELLI-FLUENT**.

mēliōr, *mēliūs*, *gen. mēliōrīs* (*comp. of bonus*), *better*.

mēmīnī, *mēmīniessē*, *remember* [see 127].

mēmōr, *gen. mēmōrīs*, *mindful of*, *mindful*.

mēmōriā, *ae*, *f*. (*memor* *mindful of*), **MEMORY**, *recollection*, *remembrance*.

mens, *mentīs*, *f*., *mind*. See **animus**. **MENTAL**.

mensīs, *mensīs*, *m*., *month*.

mercātōr, *ōrīs*, *m*. (*mercor* *to trade*), *trader*, **MERCHANT**.

mercēs, *mercēdis*, *f*., *wages*, *hire*, *reward*, *price*.

mēreo, *ērē*, *uī*, *ītūm*, *deserve*, *acquire*.

mērītūm, *i*, *n*., *desert*. **MERIT**.

Messālā, *ae*, *m*., a Roman name.

mētiōr, *mētīrē*, *mensūs sūm*, **MEASURE**, *deal out*.

Mettiūs, *i*, *m*., *Metius Fufetius*, an Alban general, put to death by Tullus Hostilius.

meūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *my*, *mine*.

mīles, *mīlītīs*, *m*., *soldier*.

mīlītāris, *ē* (*miles* *soldier*, *aris* *belonging to*), **MILITARY**; *res* *militāris*, *military science*.

millē, *pl. mīlia*, *mīliūm*, *thousand* [see 108].

milviūs, *i*, *m*., *kite* (a bird).

mīnīmē [*parvē*, *mīnūs*, *mīnīmē*], *adv*., *least*, *by no means*.

mīnīmūs, *ā*, *ūm*, *least* [see 85].

mīnōr, *mīnūs*, *smaller*, *less* [see 85]; *minor* *natu*, *younger*.

mīnuo, mīnuērē, mīnuī, mīnūtūm, DI-MINISH. DIMINUTION.

mīnūs, adv. *less*. See **minīme**.

mīror, āri, ātūs sūm, AD-MIRE; *wonder at*.

mīrūs, ā, ūm (*miror wonder at*), *wonderful*.

mīsēr, mīsērā, mīsērūm, *wretched, pitiable, lamentable*, MISER ABLE.

mitto, mittērē, mīsī, missūm, *send*.

moeniā, moeniūm, n. pl., *walls of a city*.

mollio, Irē, ivī, Itūm (*mollis soft*), *soften, subdue*.

mōneo, ērē, uī, Itūm, *remind; advise*, AD-MONISH.

mons, montīs, m., MOUNTAIN, MOUNT.

monstro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*monstrum a divine omen*), *show, point out*. DE-MONSTRATE.

morbūs, ī, m., *disease*. MORBID.

mōrior, mōrī and mōrīrī, mortuūs sūm, *die*.

mōror, āri, ātūs sūm, *tarry, delay, hinder*.

mors, mortīs, f., *death*. MORTAL.

mōs, mōrīs, m., *custom, manner; usage; pl., character*. MORAL.

mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mōtūm, MOVE; *excite: castra movēre, to break up camp*.

mūliēr, mūliērīs, f., *woman*.

multitūdo, Inīs, f. (*multus much*), MULTITUDE.

multūs, ā, ūm, *much, many a; pl. many*. MULTI-PLY.

mūnio, Irē, ivī, Itūm (*moenia wall, rampart*), *fortify*.

mūnitio, ōnīs, f. (*munio fortify*), *fortification*. MUNITION.

mūnūs, mūnērīs, n., *gift, reward*. RE-MUNER-ATE.

mūs, mūrīs, m., *mouse*.

musculūs, m. (*mus*), *a little mouse*.

N.

nām, conj., *for*.

nascor, nascī, nātūs sūm, *be born*. NASCENT.

nātū, abl. sing. m., *by birth*; **minor natu**, *younger*.

nātūrā, ae, f. (*nascor be born*), NATURE.

nātūs, ā, ūm (*nascor be born*), *old*.

nāvīs, nāvīs, f., *ship*. NAV-AL, NAVI-GATE.

nē, conj., *not; that not; that, lest*.

nē, interrog. particle; is appended to first word of the question and asks for information.

nēc. See **nēquē**.

nēco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *kill, put to death*.

nēgo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *deny, refuse*. NEGATION.

nēgōtiūm, ī, n. (*nec not, otium leisure*), *business*; **quid negōti?** *what business?* NEGOTI-ATE.

nēmo, nēmīnīs, m. and f. (*ne not, homo a man*), *no one, nobody*.

něpōs, něpōtīs, m., grandson.

NEPOTISM.

Neptūnūs, I, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

něquāquām, adv., by no means.

něquě, nēc, conj., and not; nēcquě — nēcquě, neither — nor.

nervūs, I, m., NERVE, vigor, energy.

nescio, Irě, Ivī and iī, Itūm (ne not, scio know), not know.

neutēr, neutrā, neutrūm (ne not, uter one or the other), neither [see 24]. NEUTER.

nīhīl, n. indecl., nothing.

nīhīlō mīnūs, adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nīhīlūm, I, n., nothing.

nīsī, conj. (ne not, si if), if not, unless, except.

nītor, nītī, nīsūs or nixus sūm, strive, endeavor.

nōbīlis, nōbīlē (nosco know, bilis denoting capability), well known, NOBLE, of high rank.

nōbīlītās, ātis, f. (nobīlis noble), NOBILITY.

nōlo, nollě, nōluī (non not, volo willing), be unwilling.

nōmēn, nōmīnis, n., NAME.

nōn, adv., not.

nonně, interrog. particle, expects the answer yes.

non-nullūs, ā, ūm, some one; nonnullī, ōrūm, m. pl., several persons.

Norēiā, ae, f., a town in Noricum.

Noricūs, ā, ūm, of Noricum, a

country lying between the Upper Danube and Eastern Alps.

nōs, pers. pron., we [see 112].

nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm, our, ours.

nōto, ārě, āvī, ātūm (nota, a mark), mark. NOTE, NOTATION.

Noviodūnūm, I, n., the name of several cities in Gaul.

nōvūs, ā, ūm, new, strange⁺, recent, fresh; novae res, revolution; agmen novissimum, the rear. NOVEL.

nox, noctīs, f., night.

nūbēs, nūbīs, f., cloud.

nūbo, nūbērě, nupsī, nuptūm, veil herself for the bridegroom, marry [of a bride]. NUPTIAL.

nūdūs, ā, ūm, naked, bare; NUDE.

nullūs, ā, ūm (ne not, ullus any one), no, none, not any one.

nūm, whether; in direct questions to be omitted in translation.

Nūma, ae, m., Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

nūmērūs, I, m., NUMBER.

Nūmītōr, ōrīs, m., father of Rhea Silvia.

nunc, adv., now.

nuncio, ārě, āvī, ātūm (nuncius messenger), AN-NOUNCE, report.

nuncūpo, ārě, āvī, ātūm, to name.

nunquām and numquām, adv. (ne not, unquam ever), never.

nūpěr, adv. (novus new), newly, recently.

nutrio, ĩrě, Ivī, Itūm, nourish.

NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nymphă, ae, f., *a nymph*; the nymphs were demi-goddesses inhabiting the sea, rivers, fountains, woods, trees, and mountains.

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for*.

obēdio, **irē**, **ivī**, **itūm** (ob without any additional force, *audio listen to*), *listen to, obey*; be subject to. OBEDIENT.

ob-eo, **irē**, **ivī** and **ii**, **itūm** (ob towards, *eo go*), *die*.

ob-erro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ob about, *erro wander*), *wander about, wander*.

ob-jicio, **jicērē**, **jēcī**, **jectūm** (ob before, at; *jacio throw*), *throw before, at, or against; throw up*. OBJECT, OBJECTION.

oblīviscor, **oblīviscī**, **oblītūs sūm**, *forget*.

ob-ruo, **ruērē**, **ruī**, **rūtūm** (ob without additional force, *ruo cast down with violence*), *overwhelm; cover*.

ob-secro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ob on account of, *sacra sacrifices*), *beseech, implore*.

obsēs, **obsīdīs**, m. (*obsideo stay*), *hostage*.

ob-testor, **ārī**, **ātūs sūm** (ob with no additional force, *testor bear witness*), *conjure, beseech*.

ob-tīneo, **tīnērē**, **tīnuī**, **tentūm** (ob with no additional force, *teneo hold*), *hold, OBTAIN, possess*.

obviām, adv., *in the way*; **obviam irē** or **fiōri**, *to meet*.

occāsūs, **ūs**, m. (*occido fall*), *going down; solis occāsu*, *at sunset*.

oc-cīdo, **cīdērē**, **cīdī**, **cīsūm** (ob against, *caedo cut, strike*), *kill, slay*.

oc-culto, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm**, *hide, conceal*. OCCULT.

oc-cūpo, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ob with no additional force, *capio take*), *seize, take possession of, OCCUPY. OCCUPATION*.

oc-curro, **currērē**, **cūcurī** and **curī**, **cursūm** (ob towards, *curro run*), *meet*. OCCUR, OCCURRENCE.

Oceānūs, **I**, m., OCEAN.

Ocelūm, **I**, n, a town in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul.

octāvūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *eighth*. OCTAVE.

octō-dēcīm, num. adj., *eighteen*.

octō-gintā, num. adj, *eighty*.

ocūlūs, **I**, m., *eye*. OCULIST.

ōdī, **ōdissē**, *hate* [see 127].

of-fendo, **fendērē**, **fendī**, **fensūm**, OFFEND, wound. OFFENCE.

of-fēro, **of-fērrē**, **ob-tūlī**, **oblātūm** (ob towards, *fero bring*), OFFER, present.

offīcium, **I**, n. (*opes aid, facio render*), *service, duty; obedience, allegiance*. OFFICE.

omnīnō, adv. (*omnis all*), *altogether, at all*.

omnis, **omnē**, *all, every, the whole*.

OMNI-SCIENCE, OMNI-POTENT, OMNI-PRESENT.

ōnūs, **ōnērīs**, n., *load, burden; weight; size*. ONEROUS.

ōpīs, **ōpēm**, **ōpē** [nom., dat., and voc. sing. not used; pl. entire]; pl., **ōpēs**, **ōpūm**, **ōpībūs**, etc.; f., *power; means, resources*.

ōportēt, **ōportērē**, **ōportuīt**, *it behooves, it is necessary, one ought* [see 128 and LN. LXIX., Examples 6-8].

oppīdūm, **ī**, n., *town, walled town*.

op-pugno, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (ob against, *pugno fight*), *attack, besiege, assault*.

optio, **ōnīs**, f. (*opto choose*), *choice*, OPTION.

ōpūs, **ōpērīs**, n., *work, labor*.

ōrātio, **ōrātiōnīs**, f. (*oro speak*), *speech, harangue*; ORATION.

ōrātōr, **ōrātōrīs**, m. (*oro plead*), ORATOR.

ordīno, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*ordo arranging*), *arrange, order*.

Orgētōrix, **īgīs**, m., the noblest and richest among the Helvetii.

ōriens, gen. **ōrientīs** (part. fr. *orior*), *rising*. ORIENT.

ōrior, **ōrīrī**, **ortūs sūm**, *rise, arise, begin*.

ornāmentūm, **ī**, n. (*orno adorn*), ORNAMENT, *distinction*.

ōro, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*os mouth*), *beseech, beg; implore, pray*.

ōs, **ōrīs**, n., *mouth; face*. ORAL.

ōs, **ossīs**, n., *bone*. OSSIFY.

os-tendo, **tendērē**, **tendī**, **tentūm** (ob before, *tendo spread*), *show, point out, exhibit*. OSTENSIBLE.

Ostiā, ae, f., a town at the mouth of the Tiber, built by Ancus Marcius.

ostiūm, **ī**, n., *mouth of a river*.

ōvūm, **ī**, n., *egg*. OVAL.

P.

P., abbreviation of *Publius*, a Roman praenomen.

pābūlātio, **ōnīs**, f., *foraging*.

pābūlūm, **ī**, n. (*pasco feed*), *food*.

pāco, **ārē**, **āvī**, **ātūm** (*pax peace*), PACIFY.

paenē, adv., *almost, nearly*.

pāgūs, **ī**, m., *district, canton*.

pār, gen. **pārīs**, *equal, like*. PAR.

pārātūs, **ā**, **ūm** (part. of *paro prepare*), PRE-PARED, *ready*.

parco, **parcērē**, **pēperci** and **parsi**, **parcītūm** and **parsūm** (*parcus spare*), *to spare*.

pārio, **pārērē**, **pēpērī**, **pārītūm** and **partūm**, *bear, bring forth; ovum parere, to lay an egg*.

pars, **partīs**, f., PART, *share; side; direction*.

parvūs, **ā**, **ūm** [comp., *minor, superl., minimus*], *small, little, insignificant*.

pascor, **pascī**, **pastūs sūm**, *feed, graze*.

passūs, ūs, m. (*pando stretch out the feet*), *step*, **PACE**; as a measure of length, about five feet.

pastōr, pastōris, m. (*pasco feed*), *shepherd*. **PASTOR**.

pātē-fācio, fācērē, fēcī, factūm (*pateo open, facio make*), *make open, open*.

pāter, patrīs, m., **FATHER**.

pāternūs, ā, ūm (*pater father*), **PATERNAL**.

pātor, pātī, passūs sūm, *let, allow; suffer*. **PASSION, PASSIVE**.

pātria, ae, f. (*pater father*), *native land, fatherland*. **PATRIAL**.

paucī, ae, ā, adj. pl., *few*.

paulūs, ā, ūm, *little*; **paulo, n.** *abl. sing., by a little, little*.

pāvo, ōnīs, m. and *f.*, *peacock*.

pax, pācis, f., **PEACE**. **PACIFY**.

pellīs, pellīs, f., *skin*.

pello, pellērē, pēpūlī, pulsūm, *drive out or away, banish; rout*. **RE-PULSE**.

pennā, ae, f., *feather*. **PEN**.

pēr, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by*.

per-cūtio, cūtērē, cussī, cussūm (*per through, quatio strike*), *strike through, strike*. **PERCUSSION**.

per-do, dērē, dīdī, dītūm (*per through, do put*), *lose*. **PERDITION**.

per-dūco, dūcērē, duxī, duc-tūm (*per through, duco lead*),

lead through or to, conduct; fos-sam perducere, to extend or make a trench.

per-fācilīs, ē (*per very, facilis easy*), *very easy*.

per-ficio, fīcērē, fēcī, fectūm (*per completely, facio make*), *accomplish*. **PERFECTION**.

perfidia, ae, f. (*perfidus one who breaks his promise*), **PERFIDY**.

pēricūlōsūs, ā, ūm (*periculum danger; suffix ōsus full of*), *dangerous*.

pēricūlūm, ī, n., *danger, risk*, **PERIL**.

pērītūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, experienced*.

per-mitto, mittērē, mīsī, mis-sūm (*per through, mitto let go*), **PERMIT, allow**. **PERMISSION**.

per-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mō-tūm (*per completely, moveo more*), *prevail upon*.

pernīciēs, pernīciēī, f. (*perneco fr. per completely, neco kill*), *ruin, destruction*. **PERNICIOUS**.

perpaucī, ae, ā (*per very, pauci few*), *very few*.

per-sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm (*per perseveringly, sequor follow*), *pursue*. **PERSECUTE**.

per-sēvēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*per-sevērus very strict*), **PERSEVERE, continue**.

per-suādeo, suādērē, suāsī, suāsūm (*per thoroughly, suadeo advise*), **PERSUADE, prevail upon**. **PERSUASION**.

per-terreo, ērē, uī, itūm (per thoroughly, terreo frighten), thoroughly frig: ten, terrify.

per-tineo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm (per thoroughly, teneo hold, lay hold of), extend; reach, tend; PERTAIN, belong.

per-turbo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (per thoroughly, turbo disturb), greatly disturb, DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.

per-vēnio, vēnīrē, vēnī, ventūm (per quite through, venio come), come through, come to; arrive; reach.

pēs, pēdīs, m., foot. PEDAL.

pēto, pētērē, pētīvi and pētīi, pētītūm, ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack. PETITION.

pētūlantīā, ae, f. (petūlans saucy), sauciness; insolence; PETULANCE.

pīleūs, I, m., hat; cap.

pīlūm, I, n., javelin.

Pīso, ōnīs, m., a Roman consul.

pīstrīnūm, I, n. (pistor miller), mill.

plāceo, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm, PLEASE; plācēt, impers., it pleases, it seems good.

plāgā, ae, f., hunting-net, toil.

plebs, plēbīs, f., commons, common people.

plūrimūs, ā, ūm [superl. of multus], most.

plūs, plūrīs [compar. of multus, see 85], more.

poenā, ae, f., punishment. PENAL.

polliceor, pollicēri, pollicītūs sūm (insep. prefix pot largely, liceor offer), promise.

pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm, place, put; castra pōnērē, to pitch a camp. POSITION.

pōpūlātiō, ōnīs, f. (populus ravage), ravaging.

pōpūlor, āri, ātūs sūm (populus people), ravage, lay waste. DE-POPULATE.

pōpūlūs, I, m., PEOPLE; pl., nations, tribes.

portā, ae, f., gate. PORTAL.

por-tendo, tendērē, tendī, tentūm, fortell, predict, presage; betoken; PORTEND.

porto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, carry, bear, TRANS-PORT. EX-PORT.

portōriūm, I, n. (porto carry), duty paid on goods imported or exported.

posco, poscērē, pōposcī, no sup., demand.

possessio, ōnīs, f. (possideo possess), POSSESSION.

pos-sideo, sīdērē, sēdī, sessūm (potis powerful, sedeo sit), be master of; POSSESS.

pos-sūm, pos-sē, pot-uī (potis able, sum be), be able, can [see 68].

post, prep. w. acc., after.

postea, adv. (post after, ea that), after that, afterwards.

post-eā-quām, after that, after.

postērūs, ā, ūm [comp., posterior; superl., postrēmus and postūmus], following, ensuing,

succeeding; postero die, on the following day; postērī, ōrūm, m. pl., descendants.

post-quām, conj., *after, as soon as.*

postridiē, adv. (*postero following, die on the day*), *on the following day.*

postūlo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, ask for, demand.

pōtens, gen. pōtentis (*possum be able*), *able, powerful, influential. POTENT.*

pōtestās, ātis, f. (potens able), ability, power; opportunity; ālicui pōtestātēm fācērē, to give any one an opportunity.

pōtior, pōtīrī, pōtītūs sūm (*potis able*), *acquire, obtain, get possession of.*

pōtīūs, adv., *rather, sooner.*

prae-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, cessūm (*prae before, cedo go*), *surpass, excel; PRECEDE. PRECEDENCE, PRECEDENT.*

praecipīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*praiceps headlong*), *throw violently, throw. PRECIPITATE.*

praecipuē, adv. (*praecipuus fr. praecipio fr. prae before, capio take*), *especially, chiefly.*

prae-dīco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (*prae publicly, dico tell*), *proclaim, declare; boast. PREDICATE.*

prae-fēro, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm (*prae before, fero bear*), **PREFER.**

prae-ficio, ficērē, fēcī, fectūm (*prae over, facio place*), *place over, put in command of.*

prae-mitto, mittērē, misī, misūm (*prae forward, mitto send*), *send forward.*

praemiūm, ī, n. (*prae beyond others, emo take*), *profit, reward. PREMIUM.*

prae-pōno, pōnērē, pōsui, pōsītūm (*prae before, first; pono put*), *put before or first; prefer. PREPOSITION.*

praesēpē, īs, n. (*praesepio, to fence in front*), *manger.*

praesīdiūm, ī, n. (*praesideo fr. prae before, sedeo sit*), *defence, protection; guard, garrison.*

prae-sto, stārē, stītī, stītūm and **stātūm** (*prae before, sto stand*), *stand before, excel; se praestāre, to show one's self.*

prae-sūm, essē, fui (*prae over, sum be*), *be over, rule over, be in command of.*

praetēr, prep. w. acc. (*prae before and suffix ter*), *past, by; besides, except.*

praeter-eo, irē, īi, itūm (*praeter by, eo go*), *go by. PRETERIT.*

praeter-quām, adv., *except.*

praetōr, praetōris, m., praetor, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually.

prātūm, ī, n., meadow.

prēcī, prēcēm, prēcē [nom. and gen. sing. not used], pl., **prēcēs, prēcūm, etc., request, prayer.**

prēmo, prēmērē, pressī, pres-

sūm, PRESS, *press upon*. OP-PRESSION.

prētiūm, *i*, n., *worth, value, price*.

AP-PRECIATE.

pridiē, adv., *on the day before*.

primo, adv. (*primus*), *at first*.

primūm, adv. (*primus*), *at first* ;
quām primūm, *as soon as possible*.

primūs, *ā*, ūm [see *s5*], *first* ;

primūm (*agmēn*), *the van of an army*. PRIME, PRIMAL, PRIMARY.

princeps, gen. **principis**, adj. (*primus first, capio take*), *first, chief* ; **princeps**, *ipīs*, m., *chief, leader*. PRINCE, PRINCIPAL.

principātūs, ūs, m. (*princeps chief*), *first place* ; *pre-eminence* ;
principātum tenēre, *to be at the head*.

priōr, **prius** [superl. **primūs**, see *s5*], *the former* ; *first*.

Priscus, *i*, m., a surname of the elder Tarquin.

pristinūs, *ā*, ūm, *former* ; PRISTINE.

priusquām, adv., *before*.

privātīm, adv. (*privus single*), *as a private citizen*.

privātūs, *ā*, ūm (part. of *privo deprive*), PRIVATE.

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, for, instead of*.

prōbo, *ārē*, *āvi*, *ātūm* (*probus good*), *show* ; PROVE. PROBATION.

Prōcās, ae, m. See *Silvius*.

prō-cēdo, *cēdērē*, *cessi*, *cessūm*

(*pro forward, cedo go*), *go forth, PROCEED, advance*. PROCES-SION.

prōcūl, adv. (*procello drive forward*), *afar off, far*.

prō-cūro, *ārē*, *āvi*, *ātūm* (*pro for, curo care*), *care for, take care of, manage*. PROCURE.

prōdīgiūm, *i*, n. (*pro beforehand, root dic point out*), PRODIGY.

proeliūm, *i*, n., *battle*.

prōfectio, *ōnis*, f. (*proficiscor set out*), *departure*.

prō-ficiscor, *ficisci*, *fectūs sūm* (*pro forwards, facio put one's self*), *set out, depart* ; *go, march, travel*.

prō-fūgio, *fūgērē*, *fūgi*, *fūgitūm* (*pro before, fugio flee*), *flee before, flee*.

prō-hibeo, *hibērē*, *hibui*, *hibi-tūm* (*pro in front, habeo hold*), *restrain, prevent, keep from* ; PROHIBIT. PROHIBITION.

prō-jicio, *jicērē*, *jeci*, *jectūm* (*pro forward, jacio throw*), *throw forward, cast away* ; *se prō-jicērē*, *to throw one's self forward or down*. PROJECT.

prō-mōveo, *mōvērē*, *mōvi*, *mōtūm* (*pro forward, moveo move*), *move forward, advance*. PROMOTION.

prōpē, **prōpiūs**, **proximē**, adv., *near, almost*.

prōpēro, *ārē*, *āvi*, *ātūm* (*pro-pērus speedy*), *hasten*.

prōpinquūs, *i*, m. (*prope not far, hinc hence*), *relative* ; **prōpin-**

quā, ae, f., *kinswoman*. PRO-
PINQUITY.

prōpiōr, **prōpiūs** [superl. **prōxi-**
mus, see *S5*], *neurer*.

prō-pōno, **pōnērē**, **pōsuī**, **pōsi-**
tūm (pro before, pono place),
expose to view; PROPOSE. PRO-
POSAL, PROPOSITION.

proptēr, prep. w. acc., *on account*
of.

proptēr-eā, adv., *for this reason*.

protēreā quōd, *because*.

prō-spicio, **spīcērē**, **spexī**,
spectūm (pro forwards, spe-
cio look), *look forwards*; *look*
out for. PROSPECT, PROSPEC-
TIVE.

prō-sūm, **prōd-essē**, **prō-fui**
(pro(d) for, sum be), *be for*,
be useful; *benefit*, *profit*.

prōvinciā, ae, f., *province*.

proximē, adv. [positive **prōpē**,
compar. **prōpiūs**], *very near*,
very recently, *last*.

proximūs, ā, ūm [see *S5*], *next*,
nearest; *ensuing*, *last*. AP-
PROXIMATE.

publicē, adv. (publicus fr. po-
pulus people), *in the name of*
the state.

Publiūs, ī, m., a Roman name.

pūdōr, **pūdōris**, m. (pudeo feel
shame), *shame*, *feeling of shame*.

puellā, ae, f., *girl*.

puēr, **puēri**, m., *boy*. PUER-ILE.

puērītia, ae, f. (puer boy), *boy-*
hood, *childhood*.

pugnā, ae, f., *battle*. PUGNA-
CIOUS.

pugno, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *fight*.

pulchēr, **pulchrā**, **pulchrūm**
(polio polish), *beautiful*.

pūnio, Irē, Ivī, Itūm (poena
punishment), PUNISH.

pūpillus, ī, m. (pupulus a little
boy), PUPIL, *ward*.

pūto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *think*, *be-*
lieve.

Pyrēnaeus, ā, ūm, *Pyrenean*;

Pyrēnaei montes, *the Pyrenees*.

Q.

quā, adv. (qui) *where*.

quādrāgēsīmūs, ā, ūm (quadra-
ginta forty), *fortieth*.

quādrāgintā, num. adj indecl.
(quattuor four), *forty*.

quaero, **quaerērē**, **quaesivī** and
quaesī, **quaesītūm**, see, ask,
IN-QUIRE. IN-QUEST, IN-QUI-
SITION.

quālis, **quālē**, *of what sort*; *as*.

quām, conj. and adv., *than*; *as*.

quām-ob-rēm, adv., *on account*
of which thing; *for which rea-*
son; *wherefore*.

quam-quām, conj., *although*.

quamvis, conj. (quam as, vis
you will), *as you will*; *however*
much; *although*.

quantūs, ā, ūm, *how much*; *how*
great; *as*; **quantum boni**,
how much good.

quārē, adv. (abl. of quae and
res), *for which thing*, *for which*.

quartūs, ā, ūm (quattuor four),
fourth. QUART.

quattuor, num. adj. indecl., *four*.
quē, conj., and [see LN. XXIII.,
 VY., 1].

quēror, **quēri**, **questūs sūm**,
complain. QUERULOUS.

qui, **quae**, **quōd**, rel. pron., *who*,
which, what; that [see 114].

qui, **quae**, **quōd** [interrog. pro-
 noun used adjectively, see 116],
which? what? what sort of a?
what kind of a?

quid, *why?* [see LN. XCII.,
 NOTE 1].

quidām, **quaedām**, **quoddām**
 or **quiddām**; gen. **cujusdām**;
 [indef. pron. declined like **qui**],
a certain.

quidēm, adv., *indeed*; **ne** —
quidem, *not — even*.

quīn, conj. (*qui by which, ne not*),
but that, that not.

quīndēcīm, num. adj. indecl.
 (*quinque five, decem ten*), *fif-*
teen.

quīngentī, ae, ā (*quinque five*,
centum hundred), *five hundred*.

quīnī, ae, ā (*quinque five*), *five*
each.

quīs, **quae**, **quīd**, interrog. pron.,
who? what? [see 116].

quīs, indef. pronoun, *anybody*,
anything [see 116].

quisquām, **quaequām**, **quid-**
quām or **quicquām**; gen. **cu-**
jusquām; [indef. pron. declined
 like **quis**], *any one, anything*,
any.

quō, adv., *that, in order that*.

quōd, conj., *because, that*.

quōmōdō, adv. (*qui what, mo-*
duſ manner), *in what manner*,
by what means, how.

quōquē, conj, *also*.

quōtīdiē, adv. (*quot every, dies*
day), *every day, daily*.

quūm and **cūm**, rel. adv., *when*,
as; conj., since; although;
quūm — **tūm**, *both — and*.

R.

rādx, **rādīcīs**, f., *root*; **radix** or
radices montis, *the foot of a*
mountain. RADISH.

rāpīnā, ae, f. (*rapio seize*), *plun-*
dering; RAPINE.

rāpio, **rāpērē**, **rāpuī**, **raptūm**,
seize, plunder. RAPTURE.

raptōr, **ōrīs**, m. (*rapio seize*),
one who seizes; robber.

Raurācī, **ōrūm**, m., a people in
 Northeastern Gaul, neighbors
 of the Helvetii.

rēcens, gen. **rēcentīs**, RECENT,
fresh, new.

rē-cīpio, **cīpērē**, **cēpī**, **ceptūm**
 (*re back, capio take*), *take back;*
 RECEIVE; **se recipēre**, *to be-*
take one's self, withdraw. RE-
 CEPTION.

red-do, **dērē**, **dīdī**, **dītūm** (**re(d)**)
back again, do give), *return*.

RENDER, RENDITION.

rēd-eo, **irē**, **ii**, **ītūm** (**re(d)**) *back*,
eo go), *go back, return*.

rēd-īmo, **īmērē**, **ēmī**, **emptūm**
 (**re(d)**) *back, emo buy*), *buy back*,
release, ransom; purchase; hire,

farm. REDEEM, REDEMP-
TION.

rēdītio, ōnis, f. (redeo go back),
going back, return.

rē-ducō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm
(re back, duco lead), lead back,
lead. REDUCE, REDUCTION.

rē-fero, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm (re
back, fero bear), bear or bring
back, restore. REFER, RE-
LATE.

re-fluo, fluērē, no perf. nor sup.
(re back, fluo flow), flow back.

REFLUENT, REFLUX.

rēgio, ōnis, f., REGION.

rēgītis, ā, ūm (rex king), royal.

regno, ārē, āvī, ātūm (regnum
rule), reign, rule.

regnūm, ī, (rego to rule), royal
power, sovereignty; government;
kingdom.

rē-jicio, jicērē, jēcī, jectūm (re
back, jacio throw), throw back,
hurl back. REJECT, REJEC-
TION.

rēligio, ōnis, f., RELIGION, sanc-
tity.

rē-linguo, linguērē, liquī, lic-
tūm (re behind, linquo leave),
leave behind, leave; quit, aban-
don. RELINQUISH.

rēliquūs, ā, ūm (relinquo let re-
main), remaining, rest of.

rē-māneo, mănērē, mansī,
mansūm (re behind, maneo
stay), stay behind, REMAIN.

rēmīniscor, rēmīniscī, recall to
mind, recollect. REMINISCENCE.

rē-mōveo, mōvērē, mōvī, mō-

tūm (re back, moveo move),
REMOVE. REMOTE.

Rēmūs, ī, m., twin brother of
Romulus.

rē-nuncio, ārē, āvī, ātūm (re
back, nuncio bring word), re-
port. RENOUNCE.

rēpentē, adv. (repens sudden),
suddenly.

rē-pērio, pērīrē, pērī, pertūm
(re again, pario produce), find,
discover.

rē-pōno, pōnērē, pōsuī, pōsī-
tūm (re again, pono place),
place again, restore. REPOSE.

rēs, rēī, f., thing, affair.

re-scindo, scindērē, scīdī, scis-
sūm (re away, scindo cut), cut
away, destroy. RESCIND.

re-spondeo, spondērē, spondī,
sponsūm (re in return, spon-
deo promise), reply, answer.
RESPOND.

responsūm, ī, n. (respondeo re-
ply), answer. RESPONSE.

respublicā, reipublicae, f. (res
affair, publica belonging to the
people), REPUBLIC, common-
wealth [see 110].

re-stītuo, stītuērē, stītuī, stī-
tūtūm (re again, statuo set
up), restore. RESTITUTION.

rē-tīneo, tīnērē, tīnuī, tentūm
(re back, teneo hold), hold back,
restrain, prevent. RETENTION.

rēvērentiā, ae, f. (revereor stand
in awe of), REVERENCE.

rē-vertō, vertērē, vertī, ver-
sūm and

rē-vertor, vertī, versūs sūm (re back, verito turn), turn back, return. REVERT, REVERSION.
rē-vōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm (re back, voco call), call back. REVOKE.
rex, rēgis, m., king. REGAL.
Rhea, ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.
Rhēnūs, i, m., the Rhine.
Rhōdānūs, i, m., the Rhone.
ripā, ae, f., bank (of a stream).
rixor, ārī, ātūs sūm (rixa quarrel), to quarrel.
rōgo, ārē, āvī, ātūm, ask, demand, request.
Rōmā, ae, f., Rome.
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm, Roman; Rōmānūs, i, m., a Roman.
Rōmūlūs, i, m., the founder and first king of Rome; Romūlus Silvius, a king of Alba.
rūpes, rūpis, f. (rumpo break), rock, cliff.

S.

Sābīnī, ōrūm, m., the Sabines, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.
sācēr, sacrā, sacrūm, SACRED; sacrā, ōrūm, n. pl., sacred rites, sacrifices.
sācerdōs, ōtīs, m. and f. (sacer sacred, do give), priest; priestess.
saepē, saepiūs, saepissime, adv., often.
saepē-nūmēro, adv., oftentimes, frequently.

sālūto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (salus greeting), greet, SALUTE. SALUTATION.
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood. SANGUINE, SANGUINARY.
Santōnēs, ūm and Santōnī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Aquitania.
sāpientiā, ae, f. (sapiens wise), wisdom.
sarcinā, ae, f. (sarcio to patch), bundle; pl., baggage carried by soldiers. See impedimenta.
sātīs, adv., enough, sufficiently; used adjectively in the sense of sufficient.
sātīs-fācio, fācērē, fēcī, factūm (satis enough, facio do), do enough, SATISFY, give SATISFACTION.
Sāturniā, ae, f., a town built by Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.
Sāturnūs, i, m. (sero sow), Saturn, the father of Jupiter; honored as the god of agriculture.
scēlūs, scēlōrīs, n., crime, guilt, wickedness.
scio, scirē, scivī and sciī, scitūm, know, understand. SCIENCE.
scribo, scribērē, scripsī, scriptūm, write. SCRIBE, DE-SCRIBE, SCRIPT, SCRIPTURE.
scūtūm, i, n., a shield; [scutum was an oblong shield, made of wood, and covered with leather; clipeus, a round brazen shield.]
sēd, conj., but.
sēdēs, cēdis, f. (sedeo sit), seat;

dwelling-place; **sedes regni**,
seat of government.
Sēgūsiānī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people
of Gaul, neighbors of the Allo-
broges and Aedui.
sēmēl, adv., *once*.
sempēr, adv., *always, continually*.
sēnātōr, ōris, m. (*senex old*),
SENATOR.
sēnātūs, ūs, m. (*senex old*),
SENATE.
sēnī, ae, ā (*sex six*), *six each*.
sententiā, ae, f. (*sentio think*),
opinion. SENTENCE.
septēm, num. adj. indecl.,
seven.
septentriōnēs (septemtriōnēs),
ūm, m. pl., *the north*; **sub sep-**
tentrionibus, *towards the north*.
septimūs, ā, ūm (*septem seven*),
seventh.
Sēquānā, ae, m., a river of Gaul,
the modern Seine.
Sēquānī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people
of Gaul, dwelling on the Se-
quana.
Sēquānūs, ā, ūm, *of the Sequani*.
sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtūs sūm,
follow; accompany. SEQUENCE.
sermo, sermōnis, m., *discourse,*
conversation. SERMON.
servītus, ūtis, f. (*servus slave*),
slavery, bondage.
Serviūs, ī, m., *Servius Tullius,*
the sixth king of Rome.
servūs, ī, m., *slave*, SERVANT.
sex, num. adj. indecl., *SIX*.
sī, conj., *if; whether; see whether*.
sic, adv., *so, thus*.

siccūs, ā, ūm, dry; **siccūm, ī**,
n., *dry land*.
sic-ūt and **sic-ūtī**, adv., *as; as*
if.
signīfīco, ārē, āvi, ātūm (*sig-*
num sign, facio make), *mean,*
SIGNIFY. SIGNIFICANT.
signūm, ī, n., *SIGN, mark*; **SIG-**
NAL.
silvā, ae, f., *woods, forest*. **SIL-**
VAN.
Silviā, ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, the
mother of Romulus and Remus.
Silviūs, ī, m., name of several
kings of Alba; **Silvius Pro-**
cas, a king of Alba and father
of Numitor and Amulius.
sīmīlis, sīmīlē, *like*, SIMILAR.
sīn, conj. (*si if, ne not*), *but if*.
sīnē, prep. w. abl., *without*.
singūlī, ae, ā, *SINGLE, one by*
one; each.
sīnistēr, sīnistrā, sinistrūm, *left*.
SINISTER.
sōcēr, sōcērī, m., *father-in-law*.
sōciūs, ī, m., *ally*. AS-SOCI-ATE.
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*. SOLAR.
sōleo, sōlērē, sōlītūs sūm, *be*
wont, be accustomed.
sōlītūdo, īnis, f. (*solus alone*),
desert; solitary place; **SOLI-**
TUDE.
sōlūm, adv. (*solus alone*), *only,*
alone.
sōlūm, ī, n., *ground, SOIL*.
sōlūs, ā, ūm, *alone, only* [see
24].
sōnītūs, ūs, m. (*sono make a*
noise), *sound, noise*.

sonūs, i, m. (*sono make a noise*),
noise.

sōrōr, sōrōris, f., sister.

spātium, i, n., SPACE; oppor-
tunity.

specto, arē, āvi, ātūm (*specio*
look), look at, behold, see; face,
front, be situated.

spēs, spēi, f. hope, expectation.

spirītūs, ūs, m. (*spiro breathe*),
breath; pride; lofty airs.

spontē, f. abl. [gen. *spontis*; no
other cases found], of free will;
suā sponte, of his own free will.

SPONTANEOUS.

stātuo, stātuērē, stātui, stātū-
tūm (*status standing*), set up;
put; establish; decide. STAT-
UTE.

stērīlis, ē, unfruitful, STERILE.

stipendiūm, i, n. (*stips contri-*
bution, *pendo pay*), tax, tribute.
STIPEND.

sto, stārē, stēti, stātūm, stand;
nobis sanguine stat, it costs
us much blood. STATE, STA-
TION.

stōlīdūs, ā, ūm, foolish. STOLID.

strēnuūs, ā, ūm, bold, brave.
STRENUOUS.

stūdeo, stūdērē, stūdui, no sup.,
be eager or zealous, desire.

stūdium, i, n. (*studeo be eager*),
zeal, desire. STUDY.

suādeo, suādērē, suāsī, suā-
sūm, advise, PER-SUADE.

sūb, prep. w. abl., under, beneath;
in the time of; sub monte, at
the foot of a mountain.

sub-dūco, dūcērē, duxi, duc-
tūm (*sub from under, duco*
draw), draw from under; with-
draw; take away.

sub-eo, irē, iui and ii, itūm (*sub*
under, eo go), go under; en-
dure.

sūbito, adv. (*subitus sudden*),
suddenly, quickly.

sub-lēvo, arē, āvi, ātūm (*sub*
from beneath, levo lift up), raise
up, support; help, aid.

sub-rīdeo, rīdērē, rīsī, rīsūm
(*sub a little, rideo laugh*). smile.

sub-silio, silirē, silui and silii,
no sup. (*sub up, salio leap*),
leap up, jump.

sub-vēho, vēhērē, vexi, vec-
tūm (*sub from below, veho*
carry), bring up, transport.

suc-cēdo, cēdērē, cessī, ces-
sūm (*sub behind, cedo come*),
SUCCEEDED, follow. SUCCESSION.

Suēvi, ōrūm, m. pl., a powerful
people of Germany.

suī, of himself, herself, itself, them-
selves [see 112].

Sullā, ae, m., Lucius Cornelius
Sulla, a celebrated Roman.

sūm, essē, fui, be [see 62].

summā, ae, f. (summus highest),
amount, sum total. SUM.

summūs, ā, ūm, highest [positive
supērus, comparative **supe-**
rior, superlative **suprēmus**
and **summus**].

sūmo, sūmērē, sumpsī, sump-
tūm, take, AS-SUME. AS-SUMP-
TION.

sŭpĕr, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over*,
above, upon. SUPER-

sŭpĕrbĭo, Irĕ, no perf. nor sup.
(*superbus proud*), *be proud of*.

sŭpĕrbŭs, ā, ūm, *proud*; **Super-**
bŭs, ī, m., *the Proud*, a surname
of the younger Tarquin, the last
king of Rome.

sŭpĕriōr, **sŭpĕriŭs**, *upper, high-*
er: former. SUPERIOR. See
sŭpĕrus.

sŭpĕrŭs, ā, ūm [comp. *superior*,
superl. *suprĕmus* or *summus*]
(*super over, above*), *above, on*
high, upper.

sŭpĕro, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (*super*
over), *surmount, surpass, over-*
come, subdue.

sŭper-sŭm, *essĕ, fuĭ* (*super*
over, beyond; sum be), *be over;*
survive.

supplicĭum, ī, n., *punishment*.

sus-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cĕpĭ, *ceptŭm*
(*sub under, capio take*), *under-*
take, take upon; engage in; re-
ceive; sibi suscipĕre, to take
upon one's self.

suspĭcio, ōnĭs, f. (*suspĭcor sus-*
pect), SUSPICION.

suspĭcor, āri, ātŭs sŭm (*suspi-*
cio fr. sub secretly, specio look
at), SUSPECT.

sus-tĭneo, tĭnĕrĕ, tĭnuĭ, *ten-*
tŭm (*sub up, teneo hold*),
hold up, SUSTAIN; endure;
withstand.

suŭs, ā, ūm (*sui*), *his, his own;*
her, her own; ūs, ūs own; their,
their own.

T.

T., abbreviation of *Titus*, a Ro-
man praenomen.

tābŭlā, ae, f., *board; writing-*
table; muster-roll. TABLE.

tālentŭm, ī, n., a TALENT, a sum
of money equal to about \$1200.

tām, adv., *so, so very*.

tāmĕn, adv., *nevertheless; yet,*
still.

tamquām and **tanquām**, adv.
(*tam so, quam as*), *as much as;*
as if.

Tānāquĭl, illis, f., wife of Tarqui-
nius Priscus.

tandĕm, adv., *at length; at last*.

tantŭs, ā, ūm, *so great, such, so*
large.

tardĭtās, ātis, f. (*tardus slow*),
slowness, TARDINESS; heaviness.

Tarpĕiā, ae, f., *Tarpeia* [pro-
nounced *Tar-pĕ-ya*], daughter
of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpĕiŭs, ā, ūm, *Tarpeian* [pro-
nounced *Tar-pĕ-yan*]; **mons**
Tarpĕius, *the Tarpeian Rock*,
the name of a rock on the
Capitoline hill from which
criminals were thrown head-
long; *the Tarpeian Mount*.

Tarquĭniĭ, ōrŭm, m. pl., an an-
cient town of Etruria.

Tarquĭniŭs, ī, m., *Tarquin*, the
name of an illustrious Ro-
man family, of which two,
Priscus and Superbus, were
kings.

tectūm, **I**, **n.** (*tego to cover*),
roof.

tēlūm, **I**, **n.**, *weapon, missile.*

tempēro, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm** (*tempus a piece cut off*), *abstain.*

TEMPER, **TEMPERATE.**

tempestās, **ātīs**, **f.** (*tempus time*), *storm*; **TEMPEST.**

templūm, **I**, **n.**, **TEMPLE.**

tempūs, **tempōris**, **n.**, *time.*

TEMPORAL.

tēneo, **tēnērē**, **tēnuī**, **tentūm**,
hold; *have, possess; keep*; *restrain*; *mēmōriā tēnērē*, *to remember.*

tēnēr, **tēnērā**, **tēnērūm**, **TENDER**, *delicate.*

tento, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm**, *try.* **TENTATIVE.**

terrā, **ae**, **f.**, *earth, land.* **TER-RACE,**

terreo, **ērē**, **uī**, **itūm**, *frighten,*
TERRIFY.

terrīto, **ārē**, **āvi**, **ātūm** (*terreo frighten*), *terrify.*

terrītōriūm, **I**, **n.** (*terra earth*),
TERRITORY.

tertio, **adv.** (*tertius third*), *the third time.*

testīs, **testīs**, **m.** and **f.**, *witness.*
TESTIFY.

Ti, abbreviation of *Tiberius*, a Roman praenomen.

Tībērīs, **is** [*acc. im, abl. ī*], **m.**,
the Tiber, a river in Italy on which Rome is situated.

Tībēriūs, **i**, **m.** See **Ti**.

timeo, **ērē**, **uī**, *no supine, to fear.*

tīmīdūs, **ā**, **ūm**, (*timeo to fear*),
TIMID; *cowardly.*

tīmōr, **tīmōris**, **m.**, *fear.* **TIM-OROUS.**

tintinnābūlūm, **I**, **n.** (*tintinno to ring*), *bell.*

Tītūs, **I**, **m.** See **T**.

tollo, **tollērē**, **sustūlī**, **sublātūm**, *lift, raise; pick up; remove, take away; destroy.*

tōnitrūs, **ūs**, **m.**, and **tōnitrū**, **n.**
indecl. (tono to thunder), thunder.

tōno, **tōnārē**, **tōnuī**, **tōnītūm**,
thunder.

tōtūs, **ā**, **ūm**, *whole, entire.*

trā-dūco and **trans-dūco**, **dūcērē**, **duxī**, **ductūm** (*trans across, duco lead*), *lead across; lead; lead from one place to another.* **TRA DUCE.**

trans, **prep. w. acc.**, *across, over; beyond.* **TRANS.**

trans-eo, **irē**, **iī**, **itūm** (*trans across, over; eo go*), *go across or over; cross.* **TRANSIT**, **TRANSITIVE**, **TRANSIENT**, **TRANSITION.**

trans-fēro, **ferrē**, **tūlī**, **lātūm** (*trans across, fero bear*), *bear across; TRANSFER.* **TRANSLATION.**

trans-īgo, **īgērē**, **ēgī**, **actūm** (*trans through to the end, ago bring*), *bring to an end; spend.* **TRANSACT**, **TRANSACTION.**

tran-silio or **trans-silio**, **sīlīrē**, **sīlīvī**, **sīlīi**, or **sīluī**, **sultūm** (*trans over, salio leap*), *leap over.*

trans-porto, *ārē, āvī, ātūm* (trans across, porto carry), carry across, TRANSPORT.

TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, triā [see 108], *three*.

Trēvīrī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Northern Gaul.

tribūnūs, ī, m. (tribus tribe), TRIBUNE; **tribūnī militūm**, military tribunes, of which officers each legion had six.

tribuo, tribuērē, tribuī, tribūtūm, give, grant, bestow. **TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTION.**

trīcēsīmūs, ā, ūm (triginta thirty), thirtieth.

trīduūm, ī, n. (tres three, dies day), three days.

trīgēmīnī, ōrūm, m. pl. (tres three gignor be born), three brothers born at a birth.

trīgintā, num. adj. indecl., thirty.

tristīs, tristē, sad, sorrowful.

triumpho, ārē, āvī, ātūm (triumphus a triumph), to triumph.

Trōjā, ae, f., Troy, a city in the northwestern part of Asia Minor.

Trōjānūs, ā, ūm, Trojan.

tū, pers. pron., thou, you [see 112].

tūbā, ae, f. (akin to tubus, a tube), trumpet.

tūbicēn, īnīs, m. (tuba trumpet, cano to sound), trumpeter.

Tulingī, ōrūm, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany, neighbors of the Helvetii.

Tullius, ī, m. See **Servius**.

Tulliā, ae, f., daughter of Servius Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius Superbus.

Tullūs, ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.

tūm, adv., then; also.

tūmūlūs, ī, m. (tumeo swell), mound.

turrīs, turrīs, f., tower. **TURRET.**

tūtōr, ōrīs, m. (tueor protect), guardian; **TUTOR.**

tūtūs, ā, ūm (tueor protect), safe.

tuūs, ā, ūm, poss. pron. (tu thou, you), thy, thine; your, yours.

tŷrannūs, ī, m., monarch; tyrant.

U.

ūbēr, ūbērīs, n., udder; teat.

ūbī, adv., when, where.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultūs sūm, take revenge; avenge.

ullūs, ā, ūm, any [see 24].

ultēriōr, ultēriūs (ulter that is beyond), farther [see 85]. **ULTERIOR.**

ultrā, prep. w. acc., beyond.

ULTRA-.

ūnā, adv. (unus one and the same), at the same time; in company, together.

undē, adv., from which place, whence.

undīque, adv. (unde, que), from all parts; on all sides.

ūnūs, ā, ūm, one, single; one and the same; pl., alone [see 24].

urbs, urbĭs, f., city. SUB-URBS.
ūsus, ūs, m. (utor use), USE;
advantage.

usquē, adv., even; till.

ūt and ūtī, conj., that, in order
that; as.

ūtēr, utrā, utrūm, which of two,
which [see 24].

ūterquē, ūtrāquē, ūtrumquē;
gen. utriusquē, etc. [declined
like ūtēr, see 24], each, both.

ūtīlis, ūtīlē (utor use, suffix ilis
denoting capability), useful, ben-
eficial, profitable.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sūm, USE, make
use of; adopt.

utrūm, adv. (uter which of two),
whether.

uvā, ae, f., a grape; a bunch of
grapes.

uxōr, uxōris, f., wife.

V.

vāco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, be unoccu-
 pied. VACATE, VACANT, VA-
CATION.

vādūm, ī, n. (vado go), ford,
shallow.

vāgītūs, ūs, m. (vagio cry,
squall), crying, squalling.

vāgor, ārī, ātūs sūm (vagus
roaming about), roam about,
wander about. VAGA-BOND.

vāleo, ērē, uī, ītūm, PRE-VAIL.

vallūm, ī, n. (vallus the line of
palisades, stakes, set about an in-
trenchment), rampart, intrench-
ment.

vasto, ārē, āvī, ātūm (vastus
empty, desolate), lay waste, DE-
VASTATE.

vectigāl, vectigālīs, n. (veho
carry), toll paid for carrying
goods into a country; tax; rev-
enue.

vēhementēr, vēhementiūs, vē-
hementissimē, adv. (vehē-
mens violent), violently, severely;
furiously; VEHEMENTLY.

vēl, conj., or; vēl — vēl, either
— or.

vendo, vendērē, vendīdī, ven-
dītūm (venum sale, do give),
sell. VEND.

vēnio, vēnirē, vēnī, ventūm,
come; arrive at.

verbēr, ēris, n., blow. RE-VER-
BER-ATE.

verbūm, ī, n., word. VERB,
VERBAL.

vēreor, vērērī, vēritūs sūm,
fear.

vērō, adv. (verus true), in truth,
truly; indeed; but.

vescor, vescī, fill one's self with;
live upon; eat.

Vēsontio, ōnis, f., the chief
town of the Sequāni.

vespēr, vēspērīs and vespēr, ī,
m., evening star; evening; ad
vespērūm, till evening. VES-
PER, VESPER.

Vestā, ae, f., Vesta, the goddess
of the hearth, to whom a per-
petual fire was kept burning.

Vestālīs, ē, of or belonging to
Vesta, Vestal.

vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, poss. pron., *your, yours*.

vētūs, gen. **vētēris**, *old, long standing, ancient*. VETERAN, IN-VETER-ATE.

vexillūm, I, n. (**velum sail**), *standard; flag*.

vexo, ārē, āvī, ātūm (**veho carry**), *trouble, annoy, harass*. VEX, VEXATION, VEXATIOUS.

viā, ae, f., *way, road; path; march*.

vicēsīmūs, ā, ūm (**viginti twenty**), *twentieth*.

victōriā, ae, f. (**victor conqueror**), VICTORY.

vicūs, i, m., *village*.

video, vidērē, vidī, visūm, *see*.

videor, vidērī, visūs sūm, pass. and deponent, *be seen; seem; seem good or proper*.

vigiliā, ae, f. (**vigilo to watch**), *watch; de tertia vigilia, in the third watch*. See LN. LV., NOTE 5.

viginti, num. adj. indecl., *twenty*.

vinco, vincērē, vicī, victūm, *conquer*.

vinculūm, i, n. (**vincio bind**), *a chain; in vincula conicere, to throw into prison*.

vindico, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *claim*.

VINDICATE, VINDICATION.

vir, viri, m., *man; hero; husband*. See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.

virgō, inīs, f. (**vireo flourish, bloom**), VIRGIN.

virtūs, virtūtis, f. (**vir man, hero**), *valor, courage; VIRTUE*.

vis, vis, [acc. **vīm**, dat. and abl. **vī**; pl., **virēs, viriūm, viribūs**, etc.] *f., strength, power*.

vītā, ae, f. (**vivo live**), *life*. VITAL.

vītis, is, f., *vine*.

vīto, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *shun, avoid*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty; scarcely, hardly*.

vōco, ārē, āvī, ātūm, *call, summon, invite*. VOCATION, VOCATIVE.

vōlo, vellē, vōluī, *be WILLING; wish; desire* [see 125].

vōluntās, ātis, f. (**volo to wish**), *wish, consent*. VOLUNTARY.

vos, pers. pron. pl., *you* [see 112].

vox, vōcis, f., VOICE. VOCAL.

vulnēro, ārē, āvī, ātūm (**vulnus wound**), *to wound*.

vulnūs, vulnēris, a *wound*.

VULNER-ABLE.

vulpes, is, f., *fox*.

II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding.
See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

A.

able, *be able*, **possum**.
about, w. numerals, **ad**, **circiter**.
abundance, **copia**.
accuse, **accūso**.
across, **trans**.
adopt, **utor**.
advancing, **veniens**.
advise, **moneo**.
affair, **res**.
after, prep. **post**; conj. **postquam**.
afterwards, **postea**.
against, in, **contra**.
aid, **auxilium**; to aid, **juvo**.
all, every, **omnis**; pl. **omnes**;
all, the whole, **totus**.
ally, **socius**.
almost, **paene**, **prope**.
alone, **solus**.
also, **etiam**.
although, **quum**, **etsi**.
ambassador, **legātus**.
among, **apud**, **inter**, **in**.
and, **et**, **atque**, **que**; both — and,
et — et.
animal, **animal**.
announce, **nuncio**.
any, **quis**, **ullus**.
anything, **quid**, **aliquid** (116, a).
appoint, **creo**.

arms, **arma**.
army, **exercitus**, **agmen**.
around, **circum**.
arrive, **pervenio**.
arrival, **adventus**.
ascertain, **cognosco**.
as soon as, **postquam**; as soon as
possible, **quam primum**.
ask, **quaero**; ask for, **rogo**.
assemble, **convenio**.
assembly, **concilium**.
assist, **adsum**.
at home, **domi**.
attack, **impētus**; to attack, **op-
pugno**.
attempt, **conor**.
at Caesar's feet, **Caesari ad pe-
des**.
auxiliaries, **auxilia**.
avoid, **vito**.
away, take away, **tollo**.

B.

bad, **malus**.
baggage, **impedimenta**.
bank, **ripa**.
battle, **proelium**, **pugna**.
be, **sum**; be present, **adsum**; be
from or distant, **absum**.
beautiful, **pulcher**.

because, quod, quia.

become, fio; become master of, potior.

before, ante, pro.

beg for, peto.

beginning, initium.

besiege, oppugno.

best, optimus.

betake myself, me confero, me recipio.

better, melior.

between, inter.

big, magnus.

bold, audax.

born, bc born, nascor.

both, uterque; both — and, et — et.

boy, puer.

brave, fortis.

bravely, fortiter.

break up (camp), (castra) moveo.

bridge, pons.

bring, fero; bring upon, inféro.

broad, latus.

brother, frater.

building, aedificium.

burn, incendo, cremo; burn up, exūro, combūro.

but if, sin.

buy, emo.

by, a, ab; by no means, minime.

C.

call, summon, voco; call, name, appello; call together, convoco; call to mind, commemoro.
camp, castra; pitch a camp, castra pono; break up camp, castra moveo.

can, possum.

capture, expugno.

carry, carry on, gero; carry on war, bellum gero; bello.

cart, carrus.

cause, causa.

cavalry, equitatus; of cavalry, equester.

cavalryman, eques.

censure, accūso.

character, natūra.

chief, princeps.

choose, creo.

citadel, arx.

citizen, civis.

city, urbs.

cliff, rupe.

cold, frigus.

collect, comperto, conféro, condūco.

come, venio; come together, convenio; come to, pervenio.

comitium, comitium.

command, be in command of, prae-sum.

company, in company, una.

complain, queror.

conceal, occulto.

concerning, de.

confidence, fides.

congratulate, gratūlor.

conquer, vinco.

consent, voluntas.

consider, habeo, duco.

conspiracy, conjuratio.

consul, consul; in the consulship of Caesar, Caesare consule.

continually, continenter.

corn, frumentum.

could, past tense of **possum**.
council, **concilium**.
counsel, **consilium**.
country, fatherland, **patria**.
cowardly, **ignāvus**.
cross, **transeo**.

D.

danger, **pericŭlum**.
dangerous, **periculōsus**.
daughter, **filia**.
dawn, at the earliest dawn, **prima luce**.
day, dies; at daybreak, **prima luce**; *on the day before*, **pridie**.
death, **mors**.
deceive, **decipio**.
decide, **statuo**.
decision, **judicium**.
deep, **altus**.
defend, **defendo**.
delay, **moror**.
deliberate, **delibēro**.
demand, **postŭlo, posco**.
depart, **discēdo**.
departure, **profectio**.
describe, **designo**.
design, **consilium**.
desire, **studium, cupiditas**.
desirous, **cupidus**.
destroy, **deleo**.
destruction, **perniciēs**.
determine, **judico**.
devastate, **vasto**.
die, **morior**.
differ, **diffēro**.
difficulty, angustiae; with difficulty, **vix**.

dig, fodio.
direction, **pars**.
distance, **spatium**.
distant, be distant, **absum**; *most distant*, **extrēmus**.
distinguished, **nobilis**.
disturb, **commoveo**.
ditch, fossa.
divulge, **enuncio**.
do, facio.
draw, **duco**.
dwell, **incollo**.

E.

each, to each other, inter se.
easily, **facile**.
easy, facilis; very easy, **perfacilis**.
either — or, aut — aut.
elect, **creo**.
embassy, **legatio**.
empire, **imperium**.
empty, infuso.
encamp, castra pono; consido.
encompass, **contineo**.
encourage, **confirmo**.
end, finis.
endeavor, nitor.
endure, subeo.
enemy, hostis.
enervate, effemino.
entire, totus.
entreat, imploro, oro.
equal, par, aequus.
establish, confirmo.
even, not even, ne — quidem.
excel, praecēdo, praesto.
exhort, hortor.
expectation, spes.

extraordinary, incredibilia.
eye, oculus.

F.

far, by far, longe; very far, longissime.
farther, adj., ulterior; adv., longius.
father, pater.
father-in-law, socer.
fatherland, patria.
favor, faveo.
fear, timor; to fear, timeo, vereor.
few, pauci.
field, ager.
fifteen, quindécim.
fifth, quintus.
fight, pugno.
find, reperio.
fire, ignis; set on fire, incendo.
first, primus; in the first part of the night, prima nocte.
five, quinque.
flight, fuga.
flee, fugio.
flow, fluo.
follow, sequor.
fond, cupidus.
foot, pes; at the foot of the mountain, sub monte.
for, de w. abl., ad w. acc.; for this reason, hoc, eo.
foraging, pabulatio.
forest, silva.
forget, obliviscor.
former, pristinus, vetus.
forth, lead forth, edūco.

fortify, munio.
fortune, fortuna.
forward, send forward, praemitto; move forward, promoveo.
free, liber; of one's own free will, sua sponte.
friend, amicus.
friendly, amicus.
friendship, amicitia.
from, from near, a, ab; from out of, e, ex.
furiously, vehementer.
furnish, facio.
furthermost, extrēmus.
future, in the future, in reliquum tempus.

G.

garrison, praesidium.
general, imperator.
generosity, liberalitas.
get possession of, potior.
get rid of, depōno.
girl, puella.
give, do; give orders, impéro; give satisfaction, satisfacio.
glory, gloria.
go, eo; go forth, exeo.
god, deus.
goddess, dea.
gone, perf. part. of exigo.
good, bonus.
government, imperium.
grandfather, avus.
grant, concēdo.
great, magnus; so great, tantus.
grievous, gravis.
guard, custos.

H.

happen, accidō, fio.
happy, felix.
harass, vexo.
hasten, matūro, contendo, accurro.
have, habeo.
he says, dicit.
hear, audio.
height, altitūdo.
help, juvo.
hem in, contineo.
high, altus.
highest, summus.
hill, collis.
hindrance, impedimentum.
his, his own, suus.
hither, citerior.
hold, habeo, obtineo, teneo;
hold a conference, collōquor.
home, at home, domi; homeward,
domum; from home, domo.
hope, spes.
horse, equus.
hostage, obses.
hour, hora.
house, domus.
hurl, conjicio.
husband, vir.

I.

I, ego.
if, si.
implore, implōro.
import, importo.
in, into, in.
incite, facio.

influence, auctoritas.
influenced, adductus.
inform Caesar, Caesārem certiorē facio.
infuse, injicio.
inquire, quaero.
insult, contumelia.
intervene, intersum.
invile, arcesso.

J.

just, justus.

K.

keep, teneo; keep from, prohibeo.
kill, caedo, interficio.
kindness, beneficium.
king, rex.
know, scio; know, find out, cognosco; not know, nescio.

L.

land, terra.
language, lingua.
large, magnus.
late in the day, multo die.
law, lex, jus.
lay waste, vasto.
lead, duco; lead forth, edūco.
leader, dux.
leave, relinquo.
left, sinister.
legate, legātus.
legion, legio.
letter, epistōla.

levy on, **impōno**.
lieutenant, **legātus**.
like, **similis**.
line of battle, **acies**.
little, **paulus**; *a little*, **paulo**.
lofty airs, **spiritus**.
long, for a long time, **diu**; *longer*,
diutius.
look at, **intueor**; *look out for*,
prospicio.
love, amor; *to love*, **amo**.

M.

make, facio; *make or deliver a
speech*, **oratiōnem habeo**;
make haste, **matūro**; *make
upon*, **infēro**.
man, **vir, homo**.
manner, in such a manner, **ita**.
many, **multi**.
march, iter; *to march*, **iter facere**.
marriage, matrimonium; *to give
in marriage, in matrimonium
dare*.
master, become master of, **potior**.
means, by no means, **minime**; *by
means of*, see 54.
memory, **memoria**.
mile, mille passuum.
mind, **animus, mens**.
misfortune, incommōdum.
missile, telum.
month, mensis.
more, magis, amplius; *be more
willing*, **malo**.
mother, mater.
mountain, mons.

move, moveo; *move forward, pro-
moveo*.
much, multus.
multitude, multitudo.
murder, caedes; *to murder, cae-
do, occido*.
my, my own, meus.

N.

narrow pass, angustiae.
nature, natura.
near, circum, ad.
nearest, proximus.
nearly, fere.
neighbors, finitimi.
neither — nor, neque — neque.
nine, novem.
no, none, nullus.
nobility, nobilitas.
noble, nobilis.
not, non; *not — even, ne —
quidem*.
none the less, nihilo minus.
nothing, nihil.
notice, animadverto.
number, numerus.

O.

obtain, obtineo, consequor.
occupy, occūpo.
often, saepe.
old, vetus, natus.
on, upon, in.
on account of, propter.
on all sides, undique.
on the day before, pridie.
one, unus.

one by one, **singŭli**.
 one party — the other, **altĕri — altĕri**.
 opinion, **sententia**.
 opportunity, **potestas, facultas**.
 or, **aut, vel, an**.
 order, give orders, **impĕro**.
 other, **alius**; to each other, from each other, **inter se**.
 ought, **oportet, debeo**. See also **LN. LXX**.
 our, our own, **noster**.
 out, set out, **proficiscor**; out of, **e, ex**.
 overcome, **supĕro**.
 own, his own, **suus**; my own, **meus**; your own, **tuus, vester**; their own, **suus**.

P.

pace, **passus**.
 part, **pars**.
 party, one party — the other, **altĕri — altĕri**.
 pass the winter, **hiĕmo**.
 peace, **pax**.
 people, **popŭlus**.
 peril, **pericŭlum**.
 persist, **persevēro**.
 persuade, **persuadeo**.
 pitch a camp, **castra pono**.
 place, **locus**; place, put, **pono**.
 plan, **consilium**.
 please, **placeo**.
 pledge, **fides**.
 poor, **pauper**.
 possession, **possessio**; get possession of, **potior**.

power, royal power, sovereign power, **regnum**.
 practicable, **facilis**.
 practice, **exercitatio**.
 praetor, **praetor**.
 prepare, **compāro**.
 present, be present, **adsum**.
 press, press upon, **premo**.
 prevail upon, **permoveo**.
 prevent, **retineo**.
 price, **pretium**.
 private, **privātus**.
 proceed, **procĕdo**.
 promise, **polliceor**.
 protection, **praesidiŭm**.
 province, **provincia**.
 provisions, **commeātus**.
 pursue, **persĕquor**.
 put off, **confĕro**.

R.

ready, **parātus**.
 rear of an army, **agmen novissimŭm**.
 reason, **causa**.
 recall to mind, **reminiscor**.
 recent, **recens**.
 refinement, **humanitas**.
 reign, **regno**.
 rejoice, **laetor**.
 relief, **subsidiŭm**.
 remain, **maneo**.
 remaining, **reliquus**.
 remember, **memini**; **memoriā teneo**.
 remembrance, **memoria**.
 remove, **moveo, removeo**.

*reply, responsum; to reply, re-
spondeo.*

report, enuncio.

resolve, constituo.

*rest, the rest, ceteri; rest of, reli-
quus.*

restrain, retineo, prohibeo.

return, revertor, revento.

revenue, vectigal.

reward, praemium.

rich, dives.

ridge, jugum.

right, dexter.

ripe, maturus.

river, flumen.

road, via.

roul, pello.

route, iter.

royal power, regnum.

ruin, perniciēs.

S.

sad, tristis.

sake, for the sake of, causā.

same, the same, idem.

*satisfaction, give satisfaction, satis-
facio.*

satisfy, satisfacio.

say, dico; he says, dicit.

sea, mare.

see, video.

*seem, videor; it seems good, vidē-
tur.*

seize, occūpo.

select, deligo.

sell, vendo.

senator, senātor.

*send, mitto; send forward, prae-
mitto.*

separate, divido.

set on fire, incendo.

set out, proficiscor.

severely, graviter, vehementer.

ship, navis.

*short, brevis; shortest way or
route, proximum iter.*

show, probo.

shun, vito.

side, this side of, citra.

sides, on all sides, undique.

sight, conspectus.

signal, signum.

since, quum.

single, unus.

sister, soror.

skilful, peritus.

slave, servus.

slavery, servitus.

small, parvus.

*so, ita; with adjectives, tam; so
great, tantus.*

soldier, miles.

*some, some one, aliquis. See
116, a.*

son, filius; son-in-law, gener.

soon, mature.

*sovereignty, sovereign power, reg-
num.*

Spain, Hispania.

speak, loquor.

*speech, oratio; make, deliver a
speech, orationem habeo.*

stand, sto.

state, civitas.

station, collōco, constituo.

stay, maneo.

storm, expugno.

strengthen, confirmo.

strive, nitor.

such, tantus.

*sufficient, sufficiently, satis; with
sufficient ease, satis com-
mōde.*

suitable, idoneus, commōdus.

summer, aestas.

summon, voco, convoco.

sunset, occāsus solis.

*supply, copia; supplies, res fru-
mentaria, commeātus.*

surround, cingo.

survive, supersum.

suspicion, suspicio.

swiftly, celeriter.

T.

*take, capture, capio, expugno;
take away, tollo; take to one's
self, sumo.*

tarry, moror.

teach, doceo.

ten, decem.

tend, pertineo.

territory, ager, fines.

than, quam.

that, ille.

*that, in order that, ut; after verbs
of fearing, nē.*

*that not, nē; after verbs of fear-
ing, ut.*

the same, idem.

there, in that place, ibi.

their, their own, suus.

they, them, see LN. LVIII.,

NOTE 2.

thing, res.

think, puto, abitor.

third, tertius.

this, hic.

those, illi.

three days, triduum.

three hundred, trecenti.

through, per.

throw one's self, se projicere.

till evening, ad vesp̄erum.

*time, tempus; for a long time,
diu.*

to, ad.

to-day, hodie.

together, come together, convenio.

tongue, lingua.

*top of the mountain, summus
mons.*

*towards, ad; towards the north,
sub septemtrionibus.*

tower, turris.

town, oppidum.

trader, mercator.

train up, instituo.

tribute, stipendium.

troops, copiae.

try, conor.

twenty, viginti.

two days, biduum.

U.

under, sub.

unoccupied, be unoccupied, vaco.

until, dum.

unwilling, be unwilling, nolo.

upon, in.

upper, superior.

urge, hortor.

use, utor; make use of, utor.

useful, utilis.

V.

valor, virtus.

very, valde; very easy, perfacilis; very great, maximus; very is often rendered by ipse: e. g. the very city, urbs ipsa.

vicinity, in or into the vicinity of, ad w. name of town in acc. victory, victoria.

W.

wage, gero.

wages, merces.

wagon, carrus.

wait, exspecto.

walled town, oppidum.

wanting, be wanting, desum.

war, bellum.

waste, lay waste, vasto.

watch, vigilia; in the third watch, de tertia vigilia.

way, via.

we, nos. See LN. LVII.

wealthy, copiosus.

weapon, telum.

weep, fleo; weeping, flens.

what? quid?

what sort of a? qui? See LN.

LX.

when, quum.

where, ubi.

whether, utrum.

which, quod.

while, dum.

who, qui; who? quis?

whole, totus.

why? quid?

wide, latus.

willing, be willing, volo.

win, concilio.

wing of an army, cornu.

winter, pass the winter, hiemo.

winter-quarters, hiberna.

wish, volo.

with, cum.

withdraw, se recipere.

without, sine.

withstand, sustineo.

witness, testis.

woman, mulier.

word, verbum.

worthy, dignus.

wound, vulnus; to wound, vulnero.

write, scribo.

wrong, injuria.

Y.

year, annus.

yet, tamen.

yoke, jugum.

you, tu, vos. See LN. LVII.

your, tuus, vester.

youth, adolescens.

VALUABLE GREEK BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY,
CHICAGO.

"No better exercises can be found for classes in Greek Prose Composition, whether in College or the Preparatory School."—EDWARD NORTH, L. H. D., Professor of Greek, Hamilton College, N. Y.

JONES'S EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.—With References to Hadley's, Goodwin's, and Taylor's-Kühner's Greek Grammar, and a full English-Greek Vocabulary. Part I. By ELISHA JONES, M. A., late Professor of Greek, University of Michigan, (now of Germany.) Price, \$ 1.00.

Extracts from the Preface: "These exercises in prose composition are designed for a *systematic drill* in the more important principles of Greek syntax. . . . They are also intended to accompany the reading of Xenophon's Anabasis, from which are taken all of the vocabularies and nearly all the examples. Wherever practicable the exercises themselves are so framed that, with the use of the Anabasis, Xenophon's style may be imitated in turning them into Greek. To aid in securing thoroughness, each exercise after the fourteenth not only comprises the principles referred to in its own lesson, but also reviews those in at least two of the preceding. The purpose of this repetition, necessary for the young student, is to make him so familiar with the principal peculiarities of Greek construction, that he may be able to appreciate somewhat the beauties of Xenophon, and also better prepared to enter upon a more advanced study of the language.

"It is believed that Part I. contains sufficient work in prose composition for admission to any American college."

SEQUEL TO THE ABOVE, or

Part II. EXERCISES IN GREEK SYNTAX. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph. D., for the use of Freshman Classes. Price, \$1.50.

OPINIONS OF CLASSICAL SCHOLARS.

J. B. Sewall, Prof. of Ancient Lang., Bowdoin College, Me.: "'Mr. Jones's Exercises' I have been waiting for with impatience. . . . I shall have this required for admission here. I am grateful to you for giving students such beautiful pages to study from.

A. Huelster, Ph. D., Prof. of Greek, Northwestern College, Ill.: "The 'Exercises in Greek Prose Composition by Prof. Jones,' are *superlatively excellent*. They enable preparatory students to master Greek syntax with comparative ease, and are a model of accuracy and conciseness."

Rev. W. S. Tyler, D. D., Prof. of Greek, Amherst College, Mass.: "I am much pleased with 'Exercises in Greek Prose Composition' by Prof. Jones. It has the merit of great simplicity and clearness. It comprehends a great deal for so small a book. I shall have no hesitation in recommending it highly for a preparatory book."

Rev. Thomas W. Tobey, A. M., Prof. of Greek, Bethel College, Ky.: "AN EXCEEDINGLY valuable book, ably and carefully prepared and well adapted to the purpose for which it was made. Let the TEACHERS in our land UNDERSTAND ITS MERITS, and you will have for it a MOST EXTENSIVE CIRCULATION."

B. L. Cilley, Prof. of Ancient Languages, Phillips Exeter Academy, N. H.: "I find that it works well. It seems better adapted to its purpose than any book else which I have found."

MAILED, POSTAGE PAID, ON RECEIPT OF PRICE.

BOISE — FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK — Adapted to Hadley's Larger and Smaller Greek Grammars, and intended as an Introduction for Xenophon's *Anabasis*. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph. D., Prof. of Greek Language and Lit., University of Chicago. Price, \$1.25.

Prof. N. L. Andrews, *Madison University, N. Y.*: "Your 'First Lessons in Greek' is capital. It will, I am sure, have no competitor among those who use Hadley's Grammars."

Ira W. Pettibone, M. A., *Beloit College, Wisconsin*: "I am perfectly delighted with your 'Greek Lessons.' My class, after two terms spent upon it, are reading the *Anabasis*, I think, quite as easily as after a year spent upon another introductory book."

C. W. Guernsey, *Russell's Collegiate Institute, New Haven, Conn.*: "I find Prof. Boise's 'Greek Lessons' wellnigh invaluable in my classes."

BOISE — HOMER'S ILIAD. — The First Six Books of Homer's *Iliad*, with Explanatory Notes intended for Beginners in the Epic Dialect; accompanied with numerous References to Hadley's Greek Grammar, to Kühner's Larger Greek Grammar, and Goodwin's Moods and Tenses. By JAMES R. BOISE, of the University of Chicago. Price, \$1.50.

M. L. D'Ooge, *Prof. of Greek, University of Michigan*: "Incomparably superior to any other edition of Homer ever published in this country."

W. W. Goodwin, *Prof. of Greek, Harvard University*: "It is a most valuable contribution to classical learning, and I trust it will have all the success it most certainly deserves."

W. S. Tyler, D. D., LL. D., *Prof. of Greek, Amherst College*: "I find the Notes just what I expected, — the right kind in the right places. I am particularly struck with the fulness, and yet the brevity and correctness, of the grammatical references and illustrations."

BOISE & FREEMAN. — SELECTIONS FROM VARIOUS GREEK AUTHORS. — For the first year in College, with Explanatory Notes, and References to Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and to Hadley's Larger and Smaller Grammars. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph. D., and JOHN C. FREEMAN, M. A., Professors in the University of Chicago. Pages 393 Price, \$2.00.

Extract from the Preface: "In the preparation of this work two objects have been aimed at, — a comprehensive view of the Greek Language in its principal forms, and a general survey of the leading events in the history of the Greeks. The authors, as well as the events of which they write, are arranged in the chronological order."

N. L. Andrews, *Prof. of the Greek Language and Literature, Madison University*: "Boise's 'Selections from Greek Authors' fulfils the expectations excited by his former works, and is admirably adapted to the purposes set forth in the Preface. The interesting portions so judiciously chosen from various authors; the notes, calculated as they are to encourage the student to do his own work by wisely lessening its difficulties; and the references to Goodwin's and Hadley's Grammars, combine to recommend the book. ITS USE FOR A TERM PAST with our Freshman Class HAS TENDED TO INCREASE MY APPRECIATION OF ITS MERITS. Typographically, the book is simply beautiful, — a delight to the eye."

George R. Bliss, *Prof. of Latin and Greek, Lewisburg University, Pa.*: "I have examined this work somewhat carefully, and am so persuaded of its excellence that I have decided to adopt it with my classes in the Freshman year."

Rev. Jacob Cooper, D. C. L., *Prof. of Greek, Rutgers College, N. J.*: "After a careful examination of the 'Selections,' I am satisfied that this book MEETS A REAL WANT IN COLLEGE. . . . The copious notes and references appear to be all that could be desired. They show excellent taste in explaining the difficult rather than the easy passages, and give references to such authorities as the student could be expected to possess. In typography and neatness this book is a model of its kind. I have introduced it in our collegiate course."

A. H. Buck, *Prof. of Greek, Boston University*: "I found the book so admirable in the matter selected, in the soundness and accuracy of the annotations, and in the unusual excellence of the press-work, that I could do no otherwise than urge its adoption for the entering class in the college, and my high opinion of the book has been corroborated by daily use."

MAILED, POSTAGE PAID, ON RECEIPT OF PRICE.

"It deserves a place in libraries beside the great and classic essayists of other days." — *Baptist Union, New York.*

THE GREAT CONVERSERS, AND OTHER ESSAYS.

BY WILLIAM MATHEWS, LL.D.,

*Professor of Rhetoric and English Literature in the University of Chicago,
Author of "Getting on in the World."*

1 vol. 12mo. 306 pages. With Map. Price, \$1.75.

"We certainly have no American essayist who surpasses Prof. Mathews in adorning his pages with ample and elegant illustrations. They are perhaps unequalled for polish and pungency." — *New York Home Journal.*

"They are written in that charming and graceful style which is so attractive in this author's writings, and the reader is continually reminded by their ease and grace of the elegant compositions of Goldsmith and Irving. . . . We commend the volume to all lovers of good writing, who enjoy the luxury of an easy, flowing style, and who love to be instructed while they are entertained." — *Boston Transcript.*

"These essays are on divers subjects, biographical, literary, and social, and show an unusual combination of information, good sense, and good writing. The style is their great charm. It is easy, clear, happy, and forcible. It entertains the reader whatever subject is treated, and the satisfaction is all the greater because what is so delightfully said is of itself so well worth saying. Once one begins to read he is beguiled on and on." — *Boston Advertiser.*

"He touches lightly on an immense number of subjects, he darts from flower to flower with the rapidity of the humming-bird, but with all his versatility he is rarely, if ever, superficial or crude, showing a habit of reflection and a refinement of taste that betray the cultivation of the scholar no less than the curiosity of the book-fancier. The work is an excellent one, and could have been produced by no one but a scholar of great reading, cultivated tastes, and prompt decision of choice." — *New York Tribune.*

"No one can possibly read the polished essays of Prof. Mathews without feeling that he has entered into a cultivated circle, and is privileged to share the communion of one who has touched the hem of the charmed garment. In the society of this skilful artist, the reader is led into the presence of living memories. One by one they pass before him, a procession of intellectual majesty, and, led by the hand of a trusty guide, he meets and is introduced to the men of whom he has heard or read, or whose works he may have studied. The essays of Prof. Mathews are among the most delightful that it has ever been our pleasure to read." — *Chicago Inter-Ocean.*

"Worth any day ten times its cost for the tenth part it contains! A book fuller of sensible sense and sounder soundness we have not seen for a long day."—*Sunday School Times, Phila.*

GETTING ON IN THE WORLD.

By PROF. WILLIAM MATHEWS, LL. D.

Cloth, Price, \$2.00; Cloth, full gilt edges, \$2.50; Half calf binding, gilt top, \$3.50; Full calf, gilt edges, \$5.00.

From REV. NOAH PORTER, D. D., LL. D., *President of Yale College*.—"A book in which there is abundant matter of great interest."

REV. M. B. ANDERSON, D. D., LL. D., *President of Rochester University, N. Y.*—"It will give heart and hope to many a struggling young man."

EDWIN P. WHIPPLE, ESQ., *the distinguished critic*.—"What wealth of illustration he brings in from English poets, dramatists, divines, lawyers, and jurists!"

REV. A. HUELSTER, PH. D. (*in the "Evangelical Messenger"*).—"The road to prosperity is marked out with a masterly hand. The volume is replete with thought and excellent information on the many perplexing problems that are constantly arising in the various vocations of life. The farmer, merchant, student, teacher, lawyer, preacher, editor, &c., &c., will all find valuable lessons for their life-work. No one that reads the twenty-one chapters . . . will lay aside the book without being greatly benefited. Every man, especially every young man, should have it. It should be found in every family library throughout the whole country."

"There are a great number of good passages and much valuable advice in this book."
—*The London Spectator*.

"Every page contains a wealth of valuable information, and is brimful of vivid biographical illustrations."—*New York Home Journal*.

"While it enforces a truth in every line, and teaches invaluable lessons on every page, it is in manner as absorbing and attractive as a bit of Eastern fable."—*Philadelphia Inquirer*.

"Adorned with the graces of polite literature, and polished to a degree of refinement which adapts it to the demands of modern taste. . . . While announcing the laws of worldly prosperity, he holds up an elevated standard of character. His appeals are not made to human selfishness, but to the love of excellence."—*New York Tribune*.

"It is sound, morally and mentally. It gives no one-sided view of life; it does not pander to the lower nature; but it is high-toned, correctly toned, throughout. . . . There is an earnestness and even eloquence in this volume which makes the author appear to speak to us from the living page. It reads like a speech. There is an electrical fire about every sentence."—*Episcopal Register, Philadelphia*.

THE WORLD ON WHEELS, AND OTHER SKETCHES.

By BENJAMIN F. TAYLOR.

Illustrated. 1 vol. 12mo. . . . Price, \$1.50.

"Reader, do you want to laugh? Do you want to cry? Do you want to climb the Jacob's ladder of imagination, and dwell among the clouds of fancy, for a little while at least? Do you? Then get B. F. Taylor's *World on Wheels*, read it, and experience sensations you never felt before! . . . It is a book of 'word pictures,' a string of pearls, the very poesy of thought."—*The Christian, St. Louis*.

"Full of humor, and sharp as a Damascus blade."—*Philadelphia Presbyterian*.

"The pen-pictures of B. F. Taylor are among the most brilliant and eccentric productions of the day. They are like the music of Gottschalk played by Gottschalk himself; or like sky-rockets that burst in the zenith, and fall in showers of fiery rain. They are word-wonders, reminding us of necromancy, with the dazzle and bewilderment of their rapid succession."—*Chicago Tribune*.

OLD-TIME PICTURES AND SHEAVES OF RHYME.

By B. F. TAYLOR.

Red-Line Edition, Small Quarto, Silk Cloth. With 8 fine Illustrations.
Price, \$2.00. The same, full gilt edges, \$2.50.

"It gives me pleasure to see the poems of B. F. Taylor issued by your house in a form worthy of their merit. Such pieces as the 'Old Village Choir,' 'The Skylark,' 'The Vane on the Spire,' and 'June,' deserve their good setting. . . . I do not know of any one who so well reproduces the home scenes of long ago. There is a quiet humor that pleases me."—*John G. Whittier*.

"A poet he is in the true sense; a singer of songs so full of tenderness and melody that their memory lingers like a delicious fragrance. Several of his lyrics have become classic. . . . His 'River of Time' is one of the most perfect poems in the language, original in conception, full of beautiful imagery, grandly sonorous in rhythm."—*San Francisco Bulletin*.

"Mr. Taylor is a word-painter unsurpassed in America. His style is rare, quaint, full of images as a brook of pebbles, and his rhythm waves and undulates as softly and as sensuously as the wind that sways the summer wheat. . . . In the fields he sings the songs of the spring, and the passion flowers, of the roses, and the summer time. His are the birds'-notes. He interprets the quaint, low tune of the busy wren, the soaring snatches of the skylark, the liquid language of the oriole, the ever-sad and questioning call of the partridge, and the pheasant's everlasting monotone. He makes beautiful pictures. He gives one champagne to drink, — strong, effervescing, delightful."—*St. Louis Dispatch*.

PRE-HISTORIC RACES OF THE UNITED STATES.

By J. W. FOSTER, LL. D.,

Author of "The Physical Geography of the Mississippi Valley," etc.

415 pages. Crown 8vo. With a large number of Illustrations. THIRD EDITION. Price, Cloth, \$3.00; Half calf binding, gilt top, \$5.00; Full calf, gilt edges, \$6.50.

"One of the best and clearest accounts we have seen of those grand monuments of a forgotten race." — *London Saturday Review*.

"The book is typographically perfect, and with its admirable illustrations and convenient index is really elegant and a sort of luxury to possess and read. . . . Dr. Foster goes over the ground inch by inch, and accumulates information of surprising interest and importance bearing on this subject, which he gives in his crowded but most instructive and entertaining chapters in a thoroughly scientific but equally popular way. We have marked whole pages of his book for quotation, and finally from sheer necessity have been compelled to put the whole volume in quotation marks as one of the few books that are indispensable to the student, and scarcely less important for the intelligent reader to have at hand for reference." — *The Golden Age, New York*.

"A careful examination of the book has satisfied us that it is one of the most interesting and important contributions to American archæology that have yet appeared, and will take rank among the leading treatises upon the general subject by European archæologists.

"We had thought of making some extracts from the volume, but it is so full of interest, from beginning to end, as to make selection perplexing, and were it not for the restraints of copyright we should be tempted to run the whole work through the "*Popular Science Monthly*," as it contains just the kind of information, in clear, compressed, and intelligible form, which is adapted to the mass of readers. . . . The whole exposition is condensed into 400 pages, and the publishers have done their part, in the fine execution of the engravings, and the beautiful typography of the book." — *The Popular Science Monthly, New York*.

"The amount of information which is afforded, the number of important and illustrative facts that have been accumulated, the multitude of mute but indubitable evidences which zeal and industry have exhumed and collected, and which are recorded in the volume, give it a substantial and enduring value to the scholar and lover of science, and invest it with the charm of powerful interest to the non-professional but cultured reader.

"It forms a compendium of knowledge upon this deeply interesting subject of inquiry and investigation which is without any rival, — and we may say without a competitor in this country for fulness and accuracy. It therefore becomes indispensable to every public or private library worthy of the name." — *The Christian Intelligencer, New York*.

"An argument for the divine origin of the Christian religion of unanswerable force and extraordinary interest." — *The Evangelist, New York.*

THE PHILOSOPHY OF THE PLAN OF SALVATION.

By REV. J. B. WALKER, D.D.,

With an Introductory Essay by CALVIN E. STOWE, D.D. A new edition, with supplementary chapter by the author. SIXTY-SEVENTH THOUSAND. 1 vol. 12mo. Price, \$1.50.

"Though written with great simplicity, it is evidently the production of a master mind, . . . and few works are more adapted to bring sceptics of a certain class to a stand. . . . It is the disclosure of the actual process of mind through which the author passes, from the dark regions of doubt and infidelity to the clear light and conviction of a sound and heartfelt belief in the truth as it is in Jesus.

"There is, in many parts of this treatise, a force of argument and a power of conviction almost resistless.

"It is a work of extraordinary power. . . . We think it is *more likely to lodge an impression in the human conscience, in favor of the divine authority of Christianity*, than any work of the modern press." — *London Evangelical Magazine, England.*

"No single volume we ever read has been so satisfactory a demonstration of the truth of religion, or has had so strong a controlling influence over our habits of thought. . . . No better book can be put into the hands of the honest and intellectual sceptic. It is overwhelmingly convincing to reason, and leaves the doubter nothing but his passions and prejudices to bolster him up. . . . Every minister's library should have a copy." — *The Methodist Protestant, Baltimore.*

"We have commended this book before, — not too highly, for, like wine, it has improved by age. We wish it were in every library in the land, and its contents in every head." — *The Presbyterian, Philadelphia.*

THE DOCTRINE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT; OR, PHILOSOPHY OF THE DIVINE OPERATION IN THE REDEMPTION OF MAN.

Being volume second of "The Philosophy of the Plan of Salvation."

By REV. J. B. WALKER, D.D. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Price, \$1.50.

"The author's former able works have prepared the public for the rich treasures of thought in this volume. It is a book of foundation principles, and deals in the verities of the gospel as with scientific facts. It is an unanswerable argument in behalf of Christ's life, mission, and doctrine, and especially rich in its teachings concerning the office and work of the Spirit. No volume has lately issued from the press which brings so many timely truths to the public attention. While it is metaphysical and thorough, it is also clever, forceful, winning for its grand truth's sake, and *every way readable*. The author has wrought a great work for the Christian Church, and *every minister and teacher should arm himself with strong weapons* by perusing the arguments of this book. It is printed and bound in the exquisite style of all publications which issue from Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co.'s establishment." — *Methodist Recorder, Pittsburgh.*

"One of the most valuable books printed in modern times."
—*Albany Press.*

WORDS: THEIR USE AND ABUSE.

BY PROF. WM. MATHEWS, LL. D.,

*Author of "Thomas De Quincey and Other Essays," "Getting on in the World,"
and "The Great Conversers and Other Essays."*

One handsome volume. 12mo. Cloth, \$2 00.

"It can be read with profit by every intelligent student of the English language." —
The International Review, New York.

"We heartily commend the work as rich in valuable suggestions to those who desire
TO CULTIVATE ACCURACY IN SPEAKING AND WRITING." — *The Lutheran Quarterly
Review.*

"THIS BOOK IS SO INTERESTING that the reader is tempted to take it with him for
reading on the cars, or under the shade of the trees in his summer retreat, instead of
the newspaper or the last novel." — *Boston Transcript.*

"AS INTERESTING AS A ROMANCE. . . . It gives the condensed wisdom of every
man who ever handled the subject of which it treats. . . . It is a book that can be
studied with profit by all men who love our noble tongue." — *Catholic Mirror, Balti-
more.*

"We should like to put a copy of this book into the hands of every man and woman
who is using our good old Anglo-Saxon with voice or pen for any public service. It is
a text-book full of information." — *Christian at Work, New York.*

"A BOOK OF RARE INTEREST. . . . From the chapter on "The Morality in
Words," alone, a whole library of faults might be brought home to many readers, and a
WORLD OF BENEFIT would be gleaned from it by those who care to improve them-
selves." — *Brooklyn Eagle.*

"This book cannot be read by any one without conveying a great many practical hints
of easy application. . . . It will lead to the REFORMATION OF THOUSANDS OF CARE-
LESS TALKERS, and save sensitive ears from much unnecessary annoyance." — *The
Christian Union, New York.*

"Such a work as this, in which much and varied reading has been digested and con-
centrated, and by good memory, solid judgment, and entire mastery of the art of uniting
solidity with graceful easiness of style, may be regarded as a literary *bonne bouche*. . . .
The elder Disraeli never attained the art, of which the present volume is a fair and rare
example, of blending graceful ease and dignified familiarity. The philologist will turn
to Dr. Mathews's pages for exact information, while the general reader will be charmed
by their extent of literary anecdote." — *Philadelphia Press.*





